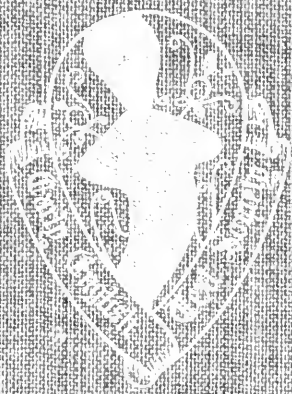
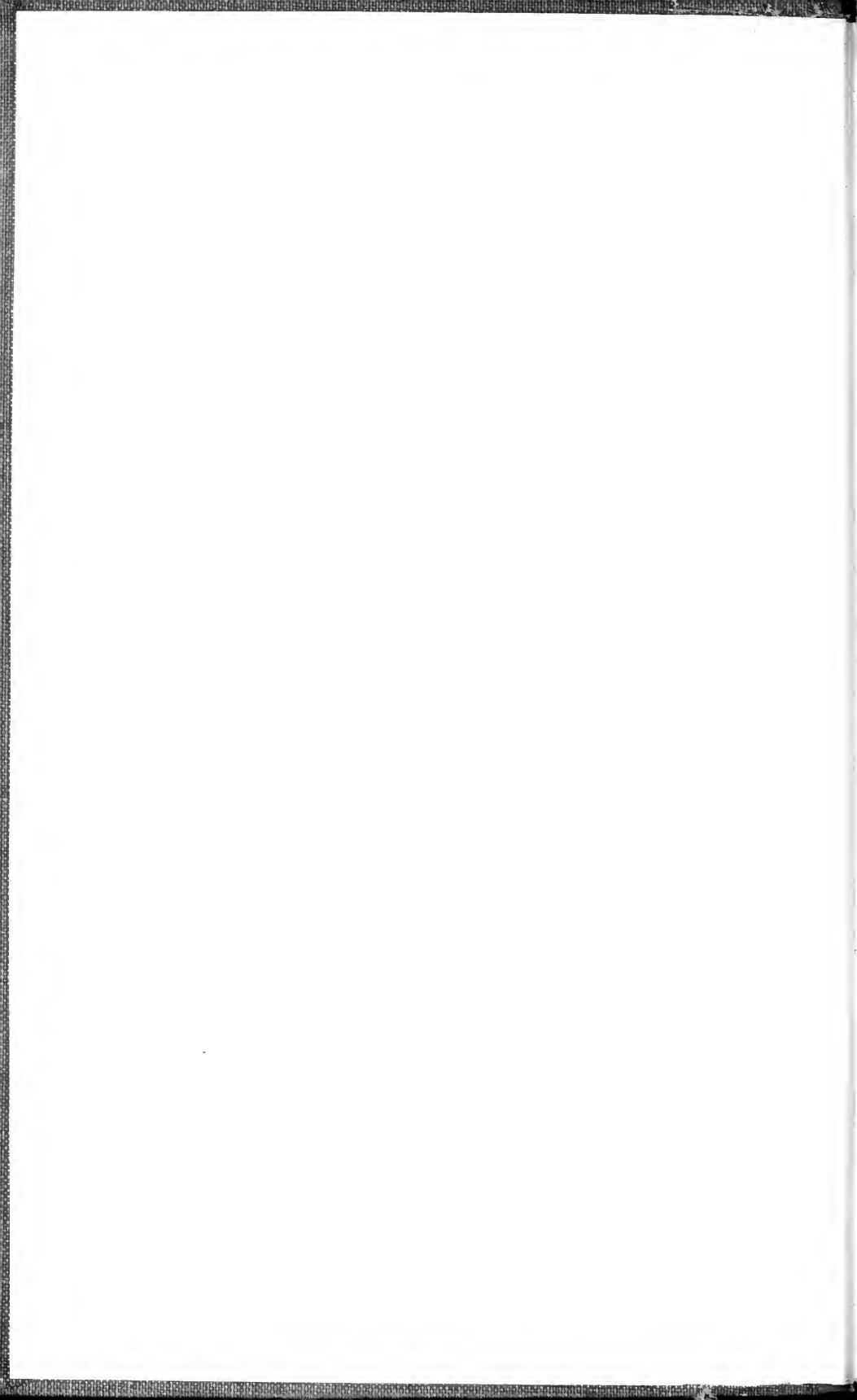


The Prose Life of Alexander

3 1761 00361316 3



1761
00361316
3



The Prose Life of Alexander.

(THORNTON MS.)

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY.

Original Series, 143.

1913 (*for* 1911).

PRICE 10s.

OXFORD: HORACE HART
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

Original Series
No. 143.



The Prose Life of Alexander.

FROM THE THORNTON MS.

EDITED BY

J. S. WESTLAKE, M.A.

THE TEXT.

*

131430
6 3 1 4

LONDON :

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY

BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.,

68-74 CARTER LANE, E.C.

AND BY HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS,

AMEN CORNER, E.C.

—
1913 (*for* 1911)

PR

1119

AZ

no 143

PREFATORY NOTE

THE delay in issuing this important prose romance has been due to the prolonged illness of its editor, Mr. J. S. Westlake. Even now Mr. Westlake has not been able to attend to the revision and publication of the book. The collation with the manuscript has been made for the Society by Miss E. M. Thompson, the proofs have been read over by Mr. John Munro, and a few changes have been made in the side-notes, foot-notes and head-lines, which otherwise remain as Mr. Westlake left them. The translations from the Latin text which make good the lacunae in the manuscript have also been inserted by Mr. Westlake.

The Introduction, together with the Notes and Glossary, are reserved for a future volume. Mr. Westlake's elaborate side-notes provide, meanwhile, a useful epitome of the story.

The Society is greatly indebted to the Dean and Chapter of Lincoln for depositing the manuscript in the British Museum, and to the Keeper of the Manuscripts, Mr. J. P. Gilson, for receiving it there.

I. G.

THE PROSE LIFE OF ALEXANDER.

LIFE OF ALEXANDER

THE most learned Egyptians who know of the size of the earth, the waves of the sea, and the order of the heavens (betokening the way of the stars and the turning of the 4 skies), have bequeathed these things to the whole world through the highness and the wisdom of magic knowledge. And they tell of a king of that land, by name Anectanabus, great in understanding, and full of love in astrology and mathematics. Now, 8 upon a day it happened that a messenger came, and said unto him that Artaxerxes, king of the Persians, was drawing nigh towards him with a very great force of foes. Yet he did not call out his army, nor get ready his advance. Instead of this, 12 he hurried into his bed-chambers in his palace, and, taking down a brazen shell, which was full of rain-water, and holding in his hand a brazen rod, sought by magic spells to summon the devils. By which wizardry he felt, in the shell itself, the fleets 16 sailing over him amid fearful affray.

Of the Wisdom of the Egyptians and of their king Anectanabus.

How Anectanabus saw by wizardry the oncoming of the Persian hosts.

Now there were lords of Anectanabus set in sway over his armies to guard the Persian border.

And one hapless man coming to him, besought him: 'O 20 most mighty King Anectanabus, there ariseth against thee Artaxerxes, the king of the Persians, with an untold horde of foes and strange races. For they are Parthians, Medes, Persians, Syrians, Mesopotamians, Brapes, Phares, Argiri, Chaldaeans, 24 Bachiri, Confires, Hircanians, and Agiophiii, and many other folks coming from Eastern lands.' On hearing this, Anectanabus said, sighing: 'The trust that I gave to thee, heed thou right well; yet thy prowess hath not been the prowess of a doughty 28 man, but the doings of a cowardly fellow. For worth showeth itself, not in the greatness of the folk, but in the steadfastness of their souls. Dost thou not know one lion putteth many

A lord of the Marshes tells him of the advancing myriads of foes and is chidden for his cowardice.

2 *Anectanabus's flight from the Persians. He greets Olympias.*

The king
sees his
further ill-
luck by
wizardy.

does to flight?' And having said these words, he went into his chamber alone, and made brazen shells, and filled them with rain-water, and held in his hand a palm rod, and gazing into this, began, as hard as he could, to utter spells, and beheld how 4 the Egyptians were being smitten down at the onslaught of the Barbarians' ships.

He fleeth
unto
Ethiopia
and from
Ethiopia to
Macedonia
and is
there a
soothsayer.

Forthwith he changed his dress, and shaved his head and beard, and took gold as much as he might bear, and which might 8 be needful to him to busy himself with wizardy. And thus he fled from Egypt, near by Pelusium. And at length, coming into Ethiopia, he put on linen apparel, [and] in the guise of an Egyptian seer went into Macedonia. And there he sate 12 himself, and before all the Greeks, and in their sight was sooth-saying. But the Egyptians, when they saw how Anectanabus was not at Court, went to Serapis, who was their greatest god, and besought him that he might give them answer as to 16 Anectanabus their king. And Serapis replied: 'Anectanabus, your king, is gone from Egypt because of Artaxerxes, the king of the Persians, who will subdue you unto his lordship. Nevertheless, when a short time hath flown by, he will come back 20 to shake off his thralldom, and will be avenged on your foes, and yoke them under you.' And as soon as they had got this answer, they made a kingly statue out of a black stone, in honour of Anectanabus. And they wrote on it, at his feet, this 24 saying, that it might be handed down for their offspring to think of. But Anectanabus remained in Macedonia, nor was he known.

The
Egyptians
learning
his absence
get an
oracle why
he is gone
and when
he shall
come back
again
victorious.
They make
of him a
black stone
image.

HOW ANECTANABUS WENT UP TO THE PALACE TO OLYMPIA THE QUEEN.

Philip,
king of
Macedon,
being gone
to battle,
Anectana-
bus meeting
Olympia
greets her
and is
answered.

In the meantime, Philip, king of Macedonia, went out to 28 battle. But Anectanabus went forward to the palace, that he might behold Olympias the queen, and see how fair she was. And when he saw her, his heart was smitten with love of her, and stretching forth his hand, he greeted her, saying, 32 'Hail, Queen of Macedonia,' disdainingly to call her 'lady'. And she, Olympias, answered him, speaking thus: 'Hail, master, come thou and sit near.' And when he sate thus, Olympias

asked many things of him. 'Art thou not an Egyptian?'
And Anectanabus answered: 'The word thou saidst was kingly,
when thou didst name the Egyptians. For the Egyptians are
4 wise, and read dreams, understand the birds of the air in their
flight, open up the hidden places, and tell the fate of those new-
born, babes. Of all these things, as a seer, I, too, have knowledge.'
And Olympia saw how he gazed upon her, and spoke, 'Master, of
8 what dost thou bethink thee, who thus lookest on me?' And
Anectanabus answered, 'I call to my mind many answers of the
gods. One answer had been that I was to look upon a queen.'
And saying this, he drew forth from his breast a cleansing
12 tablet of bronze and ivory, inwrought with gold and silver, and
on its face were three whirls. The first contained in itself the
Twelve Minds, and in the third, sun and moon were fashioned.
Next to them, was seen a chain of ivory, and from it he
16 pulled forth seven wonder-bright stars, that told the hours
and birth-dooms of men, and seven carven stones, and two
stones for the saving men whole.

And Olympia beheld these things, and said: 'Master, if
20 thou wouldst I should believe thee, tell me the year, the day
and hour of the king's birth.' And upon this, he said to the
queen, 'Wishest thou to hear nothing else from me?' Quoth the
queen, 'Tell me what shall fall out betwixt Philip and me, for
24 men say that, when Philip shall come from the war, he will
thrust me forth, and take another mate.' And Anectanabus
answered: 'They prate of many things untruly; but ere a long
time pass, it shall be as they say.' And the queen answered:
28 'I beg thee, master, unveil me all the truth.' Thereupon
Anectanabus:—'One of the mightiest gods shall share thy bed
and uphold thee through all thy thrivings and downfalls, even
if they be overstrong.' Olympia replied: 'I beseech thee, say
32 what shape this god shall put on?' Anectanabus replied:
'Neither young, nor old; his beard besprinkled with white
hairs. Wherefore, if this please thee, be ready for him, for
at night shalt thou see him, and in thy sleep shall he lie by
36 thee.' The queen said: 'If I behold this, neither as a seer, nor
as godly, but, as the god himself, will I worship' [thee]. And
at once Anectanabus said, 'Fare thee well, O queen.' After
this Anectanabus, leaving the palace, and walking straight forth

And the queen hearing that he is an Egyptian asks him of many things.

He looks on her, and telling her of an oracle, shows the instruments of his sorcery.

Olympia asks as to the king's birth; and as to what shall befall her, for men foretell evil.

Anectanabus gainsays them and foretells that she shall be beloved and have the embraces of a god in man's shape.

Leaving her he digs up herbs that he may so delude her. to the city's camp in a desert spot, tore up herbs, and ground them, and took their juice, and wrought spells and other like things of the fiend, that in that same night Olympias might behold the god Hamon lying beside her, and saying to her 4 thereafter, 'Woman, thou hast conceived him who shall beshield thee.' And, on the morrow, Olympias awoke from her slumbers, and called Anectanabus to her, and told him of the dream she had beheld. Then Anectanabus said: 'If thou wilt give me 8 room in the palace, thou shalt see the god himself, face to face. For that god shall come to thee in the shape of a great snake, and soon after, taking on a manlike body, he shall seem to be in my likeness.' And to this Olympias said: 'As thou hast spoken, 12 master, do. Take to thyself a bed in the palace, and canst thou make good the truth thereof, I will deem thee to be the father of the boy.' And, about the first watch of the night, Anectanabus took on him, through spells and wizardry to be changed into 16 the shape of a great snake, and whistling on to the bedchamber of Olympias, to fly through. And he entered her room, and rose on to her bed, and with great love began to kiss her, and the kisses betokened to her who he was. And when he rose up 20 from the bed, he smote her on the womb, and spake: 'This begetting be thy avenging, and in no wise may it be upbraided of men.'

Thus was she cheated; and was with child. On such a fashion was Olympias cheated, who had lain with 24 a man as though he had been a god. And in the morning, Anectanabus went down from the palace, and the queen was with child.

But she, in fear, asks him how to escape Philip's wrath. And when she began to be big, she called unto her Anec- 28 tanabus, saying: 'Master, tell me, what doom will Philip wreak on me, when he shall come back?' And Anectanabus said to her, 'Be not afraid: god Hamon will champion thee.' And with these words he left the palace, and went outside the 32 town, to a barren spot. And, uprooting grasses, rubbed them, and grated them, and took their sap. And he caught a sea-bird, and began to sing over the herbs, and anoint the herbs with the sap. This he did in fellowship with the fiends, that he might 36 betray King Philip through a dream. And this was brought about. That same night the god Hamon appeared to Philip, in a dream, lying with his wife Olympias, and, the night ended, he

saw him touch her womb, and seal it with a golden ring. And on this ring there was a stoue, and graven on this a lion's head, and the chariot of the sun, and a very sharp sword. And he
4 said to her: 'Woman, thou hast conceived thy saviour.' And Philip awoke from his sleep, and calling Arideus, made known to him the dream, and what he had seen. And Arideus said: 'Philip, not from man, but from a god, hath thy wife conceived.
8 In truth, the lion's head and the chariot of the sun and the sharp sword, foretoken that he, who shall be born of her, shall journey to the East whence riseth the sun! And with the sharp sword shall he underyoke to himself the nations of the
12 whole world.'

telling her she has conceived her saviour.

And awaking from the dream his seer reads him its meaning, and that the child shall be glorious.

HOW ANECTANABUS IN THE SHAPE OF A MIGHTY DRAGON
WENT TO THE FORE IN FRONT OF PHILIP AND OVERCAME
HIS ENEMIES IN THE FRAY.

In the meanwhile, King Philip fought and won. For there appeared in the battle a dragon, who went before him and laid low his foes. And when he came back to Macedonia, he met
16 and kissed Olympia. And King Philip gazed on her, and said, 'To whom, O Olympia, hast thou given thyself up. For sinned thou hast, yet not sinned, for as much as thou hast brooked frowardness from a god. But I have seen all that has
20 been done by a god on thee, in a dream: therefore be blameless in my eyes, and the eyes of all men!'

With the dragon's aid King Philip wins the fight, and coming back he speaks as in joke to his wife as to what has befallen her.

HOW ANECTANABUS IN THE SHAPE OF A DRAGON CAME
BEFORE PHILIP AT A FESTIVAL AND KISSED OLYMPIA.

On a certain day Philip was feasting with his lords and chieftains of Macedonia and with Olympia his wife. And
24 Anectanabus through wizardry took on himself the shape of a dragon, and, passing through the midst of the couch whereon they lay apart, whistled so loudly that all the revellers were stricken with fear, and the greatest dread, and coming near
28 Olympia, he put his head on her breast and kissed her. Philip, seeing this, spoke to Olympia, 'Woman, thee and all I tell; beheld this dragon, what time I laid my enemies low.'

At a feast Anectanabus comes to Olympia as a dragon and Philip tells the guests what has happened.

HOW A BIRD LAID AN EGG IN PHILIP'S BOSOM AT WHOSE
BREAKING THERE CAME FORTH A SERPENT, WHICH FORTH-
WITH DIED.

A bird lays
an egg
in King
Philip's
lap, which
breaking
gives forth
a snake,
which
before it
can go back
dies. His
sorcerer
reads him
its mean-
ing.

And a few days after this Philip the king was sitting in his palace, and there appeared unto him a little and most gentle bird, which flew into his bosom and laid an egg. And the egg, falling to the ground, was broken. And at once there crept 4
forth from it a very little snake. And it turned around, wishful to go into the egg, but, before it might put in its head, it was quenched. And Philip, seeing this, was heavily distressed, and called to him Arideus, and showed him the monstrous thing he 8
had seen. And Arideus said to him, 'King Philip, a son shall be born to thee, who shall reign after thy death, and shall fare forth over the whole world and sway all peoples, and ere he come back to the land of his birth, shall die by a most swift 12
death.'

The queen
is com-
forted by
wizardry
till the
child is
born.

And as the time of child-birth was drawing nigh, Olympia began to feel pain, and her womb was tormented, and she bade Arideus be called to her, and spoke with him: 'Master, my 16
womb is wrenched with very heavy labours.' Anectanabus [*sic in both editions* 1489 and 1494] then spake: 'Raise thyself awhile from thy throne, for in this hour the elements are troubled by the sun.' This was done, and the pain went from 20
her. And soon after, Anectanabus said to her, 'Sit down, O Queen!' and she sate herself and bore a child. And as soon as the boy was fallen on to the earth, a mighty thunderclap and thunderbolts, with tokens and lightnings came about through- 24
out the whole world. Then night was spread forth and lasted, it reaching unto the last hour of day. Then parts of the clouds fell down in Italy. And seeing these signs, Philip the king was afrighted, and went in to Olympia, and said: 'I deemed 28
that this little babe should in no wise be fostered. For he is not conceived of me, but of some god, for at his birth I beheld the heavens changed. Yet let him be fostered in my memory, as though he were my son, and follow in the stead of a son 32
I begot through another wife.' And when he said this, she handled the babe with great care. And the boy's face had the likeness neither of father nor mother. The hair on his head

Mighty
wonders
happen,
and Philip
is per-
suaded to
let the
child be
fostered
as though
he were his
own son.

was shaggy as a lion's. His eyes glistened like the stars, but each beamed with its own hue, one black, the other yellow. And his teeth were sharp, and his eager rush as a lion's. His shape foreshadowed his energy and forethought. By his parents he was called Alexander. In the schools, and wheresoever he sate, he strove with them in letters and disputations, and by his keen swiftness won the mastership. And when he was twelve years old, he was beweaponed for battle, and excelled in arms. And Philip, seeing how quick he was, praised him, and said: 'Son Alexander, I love thy speed, and wit of mind for its work. But I am sore and feel foolish that thy form is so unlike mine.' And Olympia heard this, and was greatly afraid. And she called hither Anectanabus, and said: 'Master, learn from me what Philip misdeemeth. For he said to Alexander, "Son, I love thy speed and wit of mind. But, that thy shape is unlike mine, I am saddened."' And Anectanabus began to think, and said: 'His thought is nowise harmful.' And gazing aloft as he was wont, he looked on a certain star, and riddled out his wish. And when Alexander heard this, he spake: 'The star thou seest is seen in the heavens?' And Anectanabus replied: 'My son, it is.' Alexander said: 'Caust thou show it unto me?' Anectanabus answered: 'Follow me in the hour of night, and I will show it unto thee.' Alexander said: 'Thy fate is not known to thee, or uncertain?' Anectanabus replied: 'Enough of this.' Alexander said: 'I would fain know it.' Anectanabus answered: 'In truth know that from my son shall come my death.' This said, as he went down from the palace, Alexander followed him in the hour of the evening without the city. And when they arrived up on to the ditch of the city, Anectanabus spake: 'Son Alexander, gaze thou on the stars; look how the star of Hercules is perplexed, and how Mercury's star is blithe. If I see Jove sparkling, my doom telleth me of my coming death at the hands of my son.' At this sight Alexander came up nigh to him, and made an onslaught on him, making him fall

The child is like neither father nor mother; his eyes are starlike, one black one yellow, his teeth sharp. He is called Alexander.

In the schools and at arms he excels all. Philip tells him how he loved him yet was grieved at his birth.

Olympia fearing tells this to Anectanabus, who says it is not harmful.

Anectanabus, being with Alexander, sees a star which when shown again, he announces to foretell his death at his son's hands. Alexander holding this a lie rushes against him.

[*The early Text begins.*]

downd in to þe dyke, and thare he felle, & was aft to-frusched; and það Alexander said vn-to hym one this wyse. 'Fals

Leaf 1.
Anectanabus falls

into the
dyke and
Alexander
tells him it
is right
punish-
ment.

Anectana-
bus tells
Alexander
that he is
his own
son.
Alexander
reproaches
his mother.

A Prince of
Macedonia
brings a
fierce horse
to the
palace
which the
king uses
to slay evil-
doers.

King Philip
has an
oracle of
his gods.

Alexander
taught the
seven
sciences by
Aristotle
and Calis-
thenes.

wreche,' quop he, 'that presume3 to tell thynges þat ere to comð, re3te als þou were a prophete, and knewe þe preuate3 of heuenð. Now may þou see that þou lye3, And þarefore þou arte worthy to hafe swilke a dede.' And thað Anectanabus 4 ansuerd; & said: 'I wyste wele ynoghe,' quop he, 'þat I scholde die swylke a dede. Talde I no3te lange are to þe, that myð awenð soð schulde slae me?' 'Whi, ame I thi soð?' það quop Alexandire: '3aa, for sothe,' quop Anectanabus, 'I gat the.' 8 And wit þat word; he 3alde þe gaste. And thað Alexander hert tendird oñ his Fader, And he tuke hym vp on his bakke, and bare hym to þe palace. And wheñ his moder Olympias saw hym, Scho said vn-tiff hym. 'Soð,' quop scho, 'what 12 es that?' 'Als thi foly hase made it,' quop he, 'so it es.' And thað he gert berye hym wirchipfully.

¹ In the mene tyme, a prynce of Macedoyne broghte þe ² kyng a horse vn-temed; a grete and a faire; & he was tyed oñ ilke 16 side wit chynes of Ireñ, for he walde wery menð and ete það. This ilke horse was called Buktiphalas³, bi-cause of his vgly lukynge, For he hade a hened lyke a buffe, & knottiffs in his frount, as þay had bene þe bygynnyng of hournes. And wheñ 20 þe kyng saw þe bewtee of this horse, he said tiff his seruandis, 'Take3 this horse and putte3 hym in a stable, and makes barre3 of yreñ be-fore hym, that thef3 and oper mysdoers, þat saff be done to dede, may be putt in-tiff hym, to be slaenð of hym. 24 And þay didd soo. In þe mene tyme þe kyng Philippe had ane answeere of his goddes, that hee schulde regne nexte after hym, the whilke myghte ryde that wylde horse wit-owttenð harme. So it fesse þat Alexander þe whilke was það twelue 3ere 28 alde, wexe strange & re3te hardy, & was wysse and discrete; þe whilke twa philosophirs had teched hym: þat es to say, Arcstotle & Calistene. And one a day, as Alexander passed 32 for-by þe place þare als þe foresaide stode, he loked in betwene þe barre3 of yrnne and saw, bifore þe horse, mens hend and fete, & oper of þaire membriis, liggand scatered here & thare, and he had grete wonder þare-off. And he putt in his 36

¹ Space for miniature blank, ten lines.

² *a* changed by scribe into þe.

³ Buktiphalas. In MS. a blot has

smudged out all the *i* except a dot, and obscured the *p*, making it look like *Buktsphalas*, but it reads really as above.

- hande bitwene þe barrez, And þe horse * strekede oute his nekke, als ferre als he myghte, and likked Alexander hand; and he knelið douñ oñ his kneesse, and bi-helde Alexander in þe vesage
 4 langly. And Alexander vnderstode wele þe will of þe horse, and opynd the barrez, and went into þe horse, and straked him softely on þe bakke wít his rizte hand; And belyfe þe horse wexe wonderly meke tíff Alexander; and rizte as a honde wít
 8 couche wheñ his maister biddes hym, so dide he tíff Alexander; and Alexander lukede besides hym, & sawe a sadiff & a brydeff hyng thare; and he tuke & dyd það oñ hyñ, & leppe one his bakke; & rade furthe oñ hym. And wheñ the kyng Philippe
 12 sawe hym do so, he said vn-tíff hym ' Mi soñ Alexander ' quop he: ' All þe ansuers of our goddez are fulfillede in the! For wheñ I ame dede, þou moñ regne after me ' And Alexander ansuerd, & said ' I pray the, Fader, ' quop he, ' ordeyne me horse
 16 & meñ, for I gaa seke dedez of armez. ' ' For sothe ' quop þe kyng wít a glade chere, ' Take þe a hundreth horse, and xl thosandez pounde of golde; and take wít the of þe worthieste knyghtez þat langez to me, and wendis furthe. ' And he didd so.
 20 And he tuke wít hym also a philosophre þat highte Eufestius, whilke he traysted mekiñ in, And twelue childe þat he chese to be his playfers, and went hym furthe, and come in-tíff a contreth þat es called Polipone. And wheñ the
 24 kyng of þe land herd tell, þat swilke meñ ware entred in-to his rewme in swilke araye, he raysed a gret Oste, and come agaynes Alexander for to feghte wít hyñ. And wheñ he come nerehand hym, he said vn-tíff hym. ' Tell me ' quop he
 28 ' whatt þou ert? ' And Alexander ansuerd ' I am Alexander ' quop he ' þe soñ of Philippe, þe kyng of Macedoyne. ' ' And what hopez þou þat I be? ' quop þe kyng tíff hym. And Alexander ansuerd. ' Þou ert kyng of Arridouns ' quop he.
 32 ' Neuer-þe-lesse, if all I do þe þat wirchippe þat I calle þe kyng, empride þe nathynge þare-of. For meñ seez ofte tymes meñ þat ere in heghe astate com to lawe degree, & meñ þat ere in lawe degree, come tíff heghe astate. ' ' Þou sais rizte
 36 wele ' quop þe kyng. ' Take hede to thyñ aweñ selfe! ' And Alexander ansuerd & said ' Ga hetheñ away fra me ' quop he ' for þou can say noghte to mee, ne I hafe noghte at do wít þe. ' And það þe kyng was worder wrathe, And said tíff Alexander

* Leaf 1 bk.
 Alexander sees Bucephalus.
 Bucephalus bows and submits to him.

Philip sees Alexander riding Bucephalus and says the oracles are fulfilled.

Philip at Alexander's asking gives him arms and men to invade foreign territory.

Alexander's encounter with the King of the Arridons.

They quarrel fiercely.

* Leaf. 2

The king challenges Alexander. Alexander accepts, and they both go home to gather forces.

' Luke on me ' * quop he ' þat spekes to the: Fore I swere the be my Fader hele, & I anes spitte in thi face, þou schale dye.' And wit þat he spitte at Alexander, & said: ' Take þe þare, þou biche whelpe, þat þe semeȝ tilf hafe.' And Alexander 4 stepped furthe, & said vn-tilf hym. ' For þou ' quop he ' hase dispised me, by-cause I ame littiff; I swere þe, bi þe pete of my Fader, & by my moders wambe, in þe whilke I was cousayued of godd Amod, þat þou schaff see mee, are oughte lunge, in 8 þi rewme, redi to feghte wit þe; and owþer I schaff wyid thi rewme wit dynte of swerd, & byunge it vnder my subieccion, or þou schaff make me subiecte vn-to þe.' And þare þay assignede day of Batelle; and ayther of þam went hame fra 12 oþer.

Alexander gathers his army, meets King Nicholas and slays him after the fight.

¹ And agaynes þe day of Batelle, Alexander, bi ascent & ordynance of kyng Philippe, gadird a grete Oste, & went to the place þare þe Batelle was assigned, and fand all redy þare, 16 kyng Nicoff and his oste. And þay trumped vp appoð bathe þe parties, and bigað to feghte, & many meid ware slaend oñ bathe þe sydeȝ. Bot at þe laste, Alexander hade þe felde, & tuke kyng Nichoff, & gart smytte of his hened, & went in-tilf 20 his land, and conquered it; and his knyghtes went and coround hym kyng þare-off.

On his home-coming, he finds his father at bridal with a new wife, and begs him to take Olympia back again,

And sytheñ he went hame tilf his fader, kyng Philippe, and fand hym sittand at the mete at a bridale: For he had put awaye fra hym his wyfe Olympias, Alexander 24 moder, and takedñ hym an-oþer þat highte Cleopatra; And Alexander went in-to þe hauffe, and said vn-to þe kyng Philipp: ' Fader,' quop he, ' I pray ȝow, þat for a rewarde of my firste iournee þat I hafe now made, ȝee graunte me to take 28 my Moder Olympias agayne vn-to ȝow, & do to hir as awe to be done to a qwenne ², rathere það I gyffe hir to anoþer kyng; so þat I be noȝte ȝoure enemy for euer. For this weddyng, þat ȝe hafe now made here, es vnlesuff!' Whend 32 he hadd said thir wordes, ane of þe þat satt at þe kynges burde, whase name was Lesias, ansuerd & said to þe kyng: ' lord' quop he ' þou schall hafe a soñ of Cleopatra, and he schaff regne after þe!' Alexander, thañ, was gretly greuede at his 36 wordes, and wit a wardrere þat he hade in his hande, he went

lest Alexander, giving her to another king, be his foe. One Lesias jeeringly foretelling that Cleopatra shall bear Philip an heir,

¹ Place for miniature blank, twelve half-lines.

² MS. *qwenne* with *e* inserted above text.

till hym and kellede¹ hym. When kyng Philippe sawe this, he was gretly stirred, and rase vp, & gatt a swerde * & ranne to-warde; Alexander, for to hafe smytteid hynd. Bot onane
 4 he felle downd; and ay þe nerre Alexander þat he drewe, þe mare he felle to the erthe rihte as he bene ferd. And þaid Alexander said vn-till hym: 'Philippe' quop he 'how es it soo, that þou, þat hase wonid wit dynt of swerde alle Grece,
 8 ne hase now na strenghe to stande on thi fete.' And þaid aft þe haufle was troubled, and the brydale letted. And Alexander went abowte þe haufle, and keste dound þe bourdez wit þe mete, & þe drynke þat ware appoid þaid, and tuke
 12 Cleopatra, and schotte² hir oute at þe haufle dore. And the kyng Philippe, for sorowe þat he tuke tiff, felle grefe seke. And a littill afterwardez, Alexander went till hym for to vesett hym & comforth the hym, and said vn-till hym 'Philippe,'
 16 quop he, 'if aft it be nozte semely, þat I calle þe be þi propre name; neuere-þe-lesse, nozte as þi soid, bot as þi gud' frend, I sall tesse the mynd avice. It es fully my consaile þat þou reconnselle agayne vn-to the my lady,
 20 my Moder Olympias, and at þou grefe þe na-thynge at þe dede of Lesias, ne take na heynues to the þare-fore. For vn-kyndely me thynke þat þou didd, and vngudely, þat þou drewe þi swerde for to smytte me þare-wit.' And when Philippe
 24 herd þir wordes, his hert tendird, & he bigane to wepe. And þaid Alexander went till his Moder Olympias, and said vn-till hir: 'Be nozte ferde' quop he 'ne be nozte heuy to my fader, for if alle thi trespas be prouee, & nozte knaweid, neuer-þe-lesse
 28 þou erte in party to blame.' And when he hade sayde thus, he ledd hir furthe to þe kyng Philippe. And he tuk & kyssid hir, and thus was scho reconnselde vn-till hym agayne.

³ After þis, þare come messengers Fra Darius, þe emperour
 32 of Perse, to kyng Philippe, and asked hym tribute And Alexander answerd to thir messengers, & saide, 'Saise to Darius, þour lorde,' quop he, 'þat seid þe tyme þat Philippe soid was waxeid of age þe heu þat ay es waxeid barayne & consumed'

Alexander slays him.
 * Leaf 2 bk.

King Philip having in vain sought to kill Alexander, Alexander upsets the feast and casts out Cleopatra.

King Philip having fallen sick, Alexander goes to be reconciled with him.

Philip weeps and Alexander brings him and Olympias together again.

Messengers come from Darius the Emperor of Persia, to whom Alexander refuses the

¹ The first vowel is either a *y* changed into *e*, or an *e* changed into *y*. Hence it is uncertain if *kyllede* or *kellede* was written first. I think *kyllede* was first written and changed to *kellede* from the link with

next letter.

² MS. seems certainly when magnified to write *o*, *schotte*, although it is blotted.

³ Space left for miniature, eleven half lines.

wonted tribute.

awaye, and so es Darius pryuede of his trybute.' And [when] thir messengers herd thir wordes; þay hade grete wounder of þam & of þe witt & þe wisdome of Alexander.

Armenia rises, Alexander subjugates it.

* Leaf 3.

In þe mene tyme thynges come to kyng Philippe, þat Ermony, 4
þe whilke bi-fore was suget vn-till hym, was rebelle & raysse agaynes hym. And he garte *semble a grete Oste, and sent Alexander thedir *pare* wit to feghte wit þam, and to putt þam agayne vnder his subieccion. Alexander than went wit this Oste 8
till Ermony & broghte it agayne *in* subieccion, as it was bi-fore.

Pansamy, a lord, covets Philip's wife and kingdom; he revolts and wounds king Philip to the death.

An *in* þe mene tyme, whils he was *pare*, a lorde of Macedoyne þe whilke highte Pansamy, a strange mañ & a balde, suget vn-to Philippe, and hade of lange tyme couette for to hafe þe quene 12
Olympias, conspirede agaynes þe kyng, and come with a grete multytude of folke appon þe kyng, to for-do hym. And whē thynges here of come to kyng Philippe, he went to mete hym in þe felde wit a fewe menȝee. And whē he sawe þe grete multi- 16
tude þat Pansamy hade wit hym, he turned & fledd; and Pansamy persued after hym, and ouerhied hym, and strake hym thurghē wit a spere, and ȝitt ife all he were greuouly wounded, he dyed noȝte alson, bot he laye halfe dede in the waye. And than 20
þe Macedoynes, þat wenede he hade bene dede, made mekiff sorowe. And when þis iournee was done Pansamy was gretly empridede *pare* offe, & went in to þe kynges palace for to take þe quene Olympias oute of it and hafe hir with hym. 24
And euen þe same tyme, Alexander come fra Hermony, & sawe¹ swylke trouble & styrrynge in the rewme, and hyed hym faste towarde þe kynges palace, and when Olympias herd telle þat Alexander hir soñ had þe victorie of his enemys, 28
& was comande nere, Scho went furthe of þe palace at a preuee posterne to mete hir soñ, and to welcome hym hame. And alson als scho come nere hym, scho criede appon hym & said:

Alexander comes back in the midst of the troubles and his mother goes to meet him.

'A A, my son Alexander, whare es þe grace & þe fortune 32
þat oure goddes highte the, þat es to say, þat þou scholde alwaye ouercome thynñ enemys & noȝte be ouercomē, þat Pansamy hase one þis wyse slaen thi Fader.' And alson the worde come to Pansamy þat Alexander was comē, and he 36
went furthe of palace for to mete hym. And also faste als Alexander sawe hym, he oute wit a swerd and clafe his heued

Pansamy goes forth to meet Alexander, but Alexander slays him.

¹ MS. blotted at *sawe*.

in to þe tethe, & slewe hym. And ane of þe Oste said̄ tiff
 Alexander: 'Philippe þi fader' quop̄ he, 'lyes dede in þe
 felde.' And þan Alexander went thedir thare he laye, and
 4 saw hym eueñ at þe dyinge. And þaīd he begaīd faste for to
 wepe. And Philippe loked apoīd hym, & said̄. 'A A, my dere
 son Alexander,' quop̄ he, 'wit a glade hert [I] may now dye,
 for þat þou so sounne haste vengeđ my dede,' & eueñ wit * þat
 8 worde he 3alde þe gaste. And Alexander wirchipfully gert
 hym be entered.

Alexander
 is told of
 his father's
 dying
 state. He
 goes to him
 and hears
 his last
 words.

Philip dies.
 * Leaf 3 bk.

¹ When kyng Philippe was entered, Alexander went and sett
 hym in his trone, and gerte calle by-fore hym alle þe folke þat
 12 was gaderđ thedir, lordes & oþer, and said̄ vn-to þaīd on þis
 wyse. 'Meīd,' quop̄ he, 'of Macedoyne of Tracy, and of Grece
 byhaldez þe feigure of Alexander and puttez oute of 3our
 hertes drede of alle 3our enemys. For sekerly, and 3e will take
 16 gude hertis to 3ow, thurgh þe helpe of oure goddis he schaff hafe
 þe ouerhande of all 3oure neghtebours, and 3our name schaff
 spred̄ ouer alle the werlde. And þare-fore ilkane of 3ow þat
 hase Armour, makes it redy, and he þat hase nane come to my
 20 palace & I saīd gerre delyuer hym all þat hym nedis, and ilk
 a maīd make hym redy to þe werre.' And when þe lordes and
 knyghtis þat ware of grete age, herd̄ thir wordes þay ansuerđ
 Alexander, & said̄ vn-tiff hym: 'lorde,' quop̄ thaye, 'we hafe
 24 seruede 3oure fader a longe tyme & trauełd̄ wit hym in his
 werres, & þare-fore we ere now so bryssed̄ in armes þat þare
 [es] no myghte leste in vs for to suffre disesse þat ofteīd tymes
 falles to meīd of werre. For we ere strekeīd in grete age. And
 28 þare-fore, if it be plesynge vn-to 3ow, we consaile 3ow & we
 beseken 3owe, that 3e chese 3ow 3ong lordes & 3ong knyghtes,
 þat ere listy meīd & able for to suffre disesse for to be wit 3ow.
 For here we giffe vp att armes if it be 3our will & forsakes
 32 þaīd for euer.' And þaīd Alexander answerđ & said̄: 'I will
 rathere,' quop̄ he, 'chese þe sadnesse of an alde wyse maīd thaīd
 þe vnavesy lightnesse of 3onge meīd. For 3ong meīd often
 tymes traystand̄ to mekiñ in thaire awenīd doghtynes thurgh
 36 þaire awenīd foly ere mescheueđ. Bot alde meīd wirkes all by
 consaile & by witte.' When he had said̄ thir wordes all meīd

After
 Philip's
 burial,
 Alexander
 calls his
 folk to-
 gether and
 harangues
 them.

He foretells
 to them
 their rule
 over the
 world, and
 bids them
 get ready
 their wea-
 pons for
 war.

But those
 of great
 age beg
 leave that
 they
 should not
 be made to
 go on new
 wars, but
 rather the
 younger
 men.

Old men
 work with
 wisdom,
 young men
 with bold-
 ness and
 rashness.

¹ Twelve half lines space for miniature in MS.

They allow
and con-
sent to his
words.

* Leaf 4.
Gathering
an army,
Alexander
ships to
Italy, first
taking
Chalcedo-
nia.
He takes
tribute of
the Ro-
mans and
of all
Europe as
far as the
West
Ocean.

Thence
sailing to
Africa he
subjugates
it.

The advent-
ure with
the hart.

He sacri-
fices to
Amon,
praying
the oracle.

He goes to
Taphoresey
and sacri-
fices to his
gods.

The Vision
of Serapis.

allowed his hie witte and hally þay assentede to hym for to do
his lyste.

¹ Sone after Alexander assemblede a grete Oste, & went bi
Schippe to-warde; Ytaly, and als he come by Calcedoyne, he **4**
assaylled it re;zte strangly, and þe folke of Calcedoyne * went
to þe walles of þe Citee and defendid manly. Bot at the laste
Alexander wañ the Citee, and fra thethyñ he Schippede
in-till Italy. And alsone als þe Romaynes herd of his comynge **8**
þay were wonder ferde for hym, and the grete lordes of þe
lande tuke fourty thowsande; of besande; and 10 corounes of
golde, and went vn-till hym, and presant hym wit þañ &
bysoughte hym þat he scholde no;zte werrey appoñ þañ, ne **12**
do þañ na harme. And than Alexander tuke trybute of þe
Romaynes, and of alle the folkes þat duelt bitwixe that & þe
weste Oceau, þe whilke regione es callede Europe, & lefte
þañ in gude pesse. **16**

² Fra thethyn he Schippede in-till Affrice, in thee whilke
he fande bot fewe þat rebelled agaynes hym and þarefore
als [men] swa saye, eueñ sodeynly he conquerid it & broghte it
vnder his subieccioñ. And fra Affric he went by Schippe till ane **20**
Ile, þat es called Frontides, for to consaile wit a godd þat þay
called Amon. And as Alexander & his meñ went to-warde;
þe temple of þis for-said godd, þay mett in þe waye a grete
hert þe whilke Alexander bad his meñ sla wit arowes. And **24**
þay schott at hym; bot nane of þañ myghte hitt hym.
And þañ Alexander tuke a bowe & schotte at hym & hitt
hym & slewe hym. And þañ Alexander went in-to þe temple,
& made sacrafyce of þis hert vn-to godd Amon, and by-soughte **28**
hym þat he schulde gyffe hym ansuares. Wheñ Alexander hade
made his prayers þare to godd Amon, he went wit his Oste
in-till a place þat highte Taphoresey, In þe whilke were festene **3**
gude townnes, & þay hade twelue grete reuers þat rane in-to **32**
þe see, and at þe entree of þañ in-to þe see þare was draweñ
ouer grete chynes of yryne, and thare Alexandir made Sacrafice
till his godde; And on þe same nyghte, a godd þat [hight]
Serapis apperid vn-till hym in his slepe, clēdd in riche **36**
clothyng in ane horrible forme & a dredesfull, and said vn-till

¹ Three lines miniature S.² Five lines miniature F.³ MS. has xv crossed through before
sf. f. one.

hym. 'Alexander,' quop he, 'may þou take þis montayne on þi
 schulder & here it a-way?' Quop Alexander, 'how myghte any
 mañ do þat?' And Serapis ansuerd & said, 'righte as þis
 4 montayne sall neuer wit-owten *end be remowed hethen, so thi
 name & thi dedes schall be made mynde of to the worldes end.'
 And thañ Alexander prayed hym þat he walde prophycye hym
 what kyns dede he schokle die. Serapis ansuerd and said, 'It
 8 es noghte spedfull till a man to knawe his paynefull endynge.
 For if he knewe it, peraventure, he scholde neuer hafe Ioye in
 his hert. Neuer þe lesse bi-cause þou hase prayede me to telle
 þe, I sall say the. After a drynke þou schall take thi dede.
 12 For in thi youthe þou sall make thyñ endynge. Bot spirre me
 noþer þe tyme ne þe houre when it schal be, For I will on
 na wyse telle it to the. For-whi goddez of þe este partiez of þe
 werlde sall telle the alle thi werdez.' When Alexander
 16 wakkened of his dreame, he was reghte heuy, and sent þe maste
 substance of his Oste to þe Cite of Askalon and bad þañ
 habide hym thare, and hym selfe & a certane of menze wit hym
 habade & thare he garte make a Citee & called it Alexander
 20 after his awenñ name.

¹In the mene tyme þe Egipeyens herd of þe comynges of
 Alexander, & þay went agaynes hym & submytt þañ vn-till
 hym & resayffed hym wirchipfully. And when Alexander come
 24 in-till Egipste, he fand ane ymage of a kyng made of blake stane
 curiously coruend, and he askede þe Egipeiens whase ymage
 it was, and þay ansuerd & said, 'It es þe ymage,' quop þay,
 'of Anectanabus that was kyng of Egipste nozte lange sythen
 28 gane, þe wyseste & þe worthiest þat euer was þare-in.' For
 sothe quop ²Alexander, 'Anectanabus was my Fader.' And
 þañ he knelid douñ with grete reuerence & kyssed þe ymage.
 Fra thethyñ he went wit his Oste to Surry. But þe
 32 Surriens agayne-stude ³hym and faghte wit hyñ and slewe
 many of his knyghtes. Neuer þe lesse Alexander had þe
 victorye. And þañ he went to Damaske, & Ensegged it &
 wanne it, and fra thethyñ he went to Sydon & wan it.
 36 And þañ he went vnto þe Citee of Tyre and layde Ensegge
 abowte it, and [in] þis Ensegge he laye many a day. And thare

* Leaf 4 bk.

Serapis
 foretells
 him his
 lasting
 fame, his
 deeds, his
 death. But
 of some
 things Se-
 rapis may
 not speak.

Alexander
 awakens
 saddened.
 He sends
 his main
 strength
 on to Askal.
 Where he
 was he
 founded
 the city of
 Alexand-
 ria.

The Egyp-
 tians hear-
 ing of his
 coming
 submit.
 He sees the
 image of
 Anectana-
 bus.

He acknow-
 ledges
 Anectana-
 bus as his
 father.

He invades
 Syria, takes
 Damascus,
 Sidon, and
 sets about
 the siege of
 Tyre.

¹ Five half lines space for miniature I.² quop Alexander in margin.³ Scribe wrote *agaynesande* and altered it to *agaynestude*.

Tyre resists stoutly, and he has to set a boom across the haven.

* Leaf 5.

Alexander sends for help to Jadius, Bishop of the Jews, and also demands tribute.

The Bishop pleads the oath of fealty sworn to Darius.

Alexander swears to wreak vengeance on the Jews.

He sends Meleager with 500 men to Josaphat to forage. They defeat the Lord of the country and slay him.

But the Lord of the city sends help and

his Oste suffred many dysessez. For þat Cite was so strange in it-selfe by-cause of þe ground. þat it was sett apoū, and by-cause of grete towres & many þat ware abowte it, and also bicause it was so enclosed wit the see þat it myghte noghte 4 lightly * be wonneñ by nane assawte. Alexander þaũ vmbithoghte hym, one what wyse he myghte best com̄ to for to destroy þis citee, and he gerte make a grete bastell of tree, and sett it apoū schippes in þe see eneū forgaynes þe cete, so þat 8 þare myghte no shippez come nere the haueñ for to vetaille þe Citee or suppoell it wit meñ by-cause of þe bastelle. In þe mene tyme Alexander Oste hade grete defawte of vetayflis, and þaũ he sent *lettres* vnto Iadius, þat at that tyme was 12 bischoppe & gouernoure of þe Iewes, and prayede hym for to suppoell hym wit soū meñ, and also þat he walde send̄ suñd vetails for hym & his Oste, and he scholde pay for þaũ wit a glade chere, and þat he scholde also send̄ hym the tribute 16 þat he scholde gyffe Darius þe emperour of Perse. For hym ware better, he said̄, hafe his frenchippe þaũ þe frenchiipe of Darius. The Bischope þaũ of þe Iewes ansuerd̄ þe messangers þat broghte hym þe *lettres* & said̄, ‘I hafe,’ quop he, ‘made 20 athe to Darius, þat, whils he leffez, I schaff neuer bere armes agaynes hym, and þarefore I ne may nozte do agaynes myñ Athe.’ The Messagers þaũ went till Alexander & talde hym þe bischopes ansuere, and he was greued̄ & said̄, ‘I make myñ 24 avowe,’ quop he, ‘vntill oure goddes, þat I schaff take swilke vengeance on þe Iewes þat I sañ make þaũ to knowe, whethir it es better to þaũ to be obeisant vn-to [my ?] commandement, or vn-to þe kynges of Perse.’ And he callede a duke, þat highte 28 Melagere, and wit v̄c meñ of armes, and badd̄ þaũ gaa in to þe vale of Iosaphat, þe whilke was full of bestez & brynge of thase bestez to þe Oste for to vetaille þaũ wit. And ane Sampson, þat knewe þe cuntre wele was þaire gyde. Þay went in to þe 32 vale, and gadird̄ to gedir catell wit-owte nombir & be-gaũ for to dryfe oū þaũ. And he þat was lorde of þe cuntre, Theosellas bi name, raysed̄ a grete multitude of folke and mett þaũ & faughte wit þaũ & slewe many of þaũ. Bot Melagere & his 36 felaws at þat tyñ had þe better. And ane þat highte Caulus went baldly to Theosellas, & smate of his hened̄. All this was done bot a littill fra þe citee of Gadir. And þaũ Bertyne,

lorde of þe citee, seand̄ this, was gretely stirrede and ischewede
 owte of þe citee & wīt xxx feghtyng meñ and sett vp a schowte
 apouñ the * Macedoynes alle at anes, that alle þe erthe trembled̄
 4 wīt-alle. And̄ wheñ þe Macedoyns saw that grete multytude
 of folke conð appouñ þañð, þay were rezte ferde. And̄ þan
 Melagere walde hafe sent a Messangere to paire lorde Alexander,
 for to come & socoure þañð, bot he mygte fynd̄ na mañ þat
 8 walde vndertake þe Message. Than thir twa batalles met
 Sameñ & faughte to-gedir, and thare was Sampson slaen,
 and Bertyne. And̄ þe Macedoyns wīt þe grete multitude of
 paire enemys ware dreueñ abakke, and lyke for to be dreueñ
 12 abakke & discomfites. And̄ ane of þe grekkes, þat highte
 Arttes, seyng þe meschefe þay stode In, wanð hym owte of the
 Bataile & went in alle þe haste, þat he myghte, tiff Alexander
 & talde hym þat þe Grekkes & þe Macedoynes ware in poynte
 16 to be mescheuede, bot if he suppoellde þañð þe tittere. And̄
 than Alexander lefte þe segge of Tyre, and went wīt his
 Oste to þe vale of Iosaphat, and fand̄ his meñ riȝte harde
 by-stadde wīt paire enemys. And̄ he and his Oste vmbylapped̄
 20 alle paire enemys, and daunge þañð douñ & slewe þañð ilke
 a moder soñ. And̄ wheñ he had so done he turned̄ agayne
 vn-to Tyre, and fand̄ the Bastelle, þat he hade made in þe See,
 douged̄ doune to þe grounde. For alsoñ als Alexandere was
 24 gane fra Tīre to þe vale of Iosaphat, Balañ þat was lorde of
 Tyre ischewid̄ oute of þe citee wīt thee folke þare-of, & assailed̄
 the bastell manfully, and tuk it & dange it doune. And̄ wheñ
 Alexander sawe that, he was gretly angerde, and his hert
 28 wonder heuy, and so ware alle þe Macedoynes and the Grekes.
 In so mekiff thay ware nerehand̄ in dispeire for to wyñ þe
 citee, and ware in poynte to hafe rissen¹ up þe segge. And̄
 one þe nyghte nexte suande, Alexander, als he laye & slept,
 32 dremyd̄ þat he hadd̄ in his hand̄ a grape, þe whilke hym
 thoghte he keste doune vnder his fete, and trade þare-one,
 & alsone þare rañ oute of it a grete dele of wyne. And̄ wheñ
 Alexander wakned̄, he called̄ tiff hym a Philosophre & talde
 36 hym his dreme. And̄ þe Philosophre ansuerde, 'be balde,'
 quop̄ he, ' & lefe noȝte to ensegge Tyre, for þe grape þat þou

the Macedonians are driven back.

* Leaf 5 bk.

One of the Greeks sends for help to Alexander, who, leaving the siege of Tyre, outflanks the enemy of Josaphat and slays them all.

Alexander, returning to Tyre, finds his boom thrown down, for Balan had sortied with all his people. So despairing are the Greeks that they almost give up the siege.

The next night Alexander dreams a dream and, when his

¹ MS. *rissen*, perhaps for *zissen*, but the same idiom is found elsewhere.

Philosopher interprets it, he is cheered.

* Leaf 6.

He makes another boom on ships higher than the highest city tower. He directs his men how to attack.

Cutting the cables he lets the towers over the boom float in upon the city. He climbing the walls, slays Balan, and his followers rush all at once into the city. Tyre is destroyed.

Alexander takes Gaza and marches on Jerusalem.

The Bishop of the Jews, hearing this, calls the Jews before him, and orders fasting, prayer, and sacrifice. An Angel

helde in thi hand, and keste vnder thi fete, and trade þare-one, es þe Citee of Tyre, þe whilk þou sañt wynð thurgh streuth and trede it with thi fote, and þare-fore be na-thinge abaiste.⁷ When Alexander herd thire wordes, he was gretly comforthed,⁴ and vmbithoghte hym one whate wyse he myghte gette this Citee.

And than he * garte make anoþer bastelle in þe see, grettere, & hyere, and strangere þan þe toþer was. For it was hie 8 þan þe hegheste towre of þe citee. And þis bastelle was tyede wit a hundrethe ankers. þan Alexander gert armede hym¹ suerely & wele, & wente by hym ane vp apouð this bastelle, and badd all his men þat þay schulde make þan redy for to fechte¹² & to giffe assawte to þe citee. And alsone als þay sawe hym entire in to þe citee, þay scholde all at anes presse to þe walles, and scale þan, and clymbe ouer þe walles baldely & wynd þe citee. And when all men weren redy, hee gerte smyte¹⁶ sounder þe cabills þat þe bastelle was tyed wit, & þe wawes of þe see bare it to þe walles of þe Citee. And Alexander delyuerlye stert apouð [þe] walles, whare Balan stode, and ran apouð hym & slew hym and keste hym ouer þe walles in-to²⁰ þe dyke of þe citee. And when þe Macedoyns & þe Grekes sawe Alexander entir in-to þe citee, þay schouffed to þe walles all at anes, and clambe ouer, sunð wit leddirs sunð on oþer wyse wit-owtten any resistance. For þe Tyreyens was so ferde by-²⁴ cause of þe dedde of Balan þaire duc þat þay ne durste noghte turne agayne ne defende þe wallez. And on this wyse was þe citee takeð and doungeð doune to þe erthe.

Fra þe segge of Tyre Alexander & his men went to þe citee²⁸ of Gaza and assailed it, & wit schoite while þay wan it. And Fra thethynd hyed hym towardez Ierusalem for to ensegge it.

² Qwhen þe Bischoppe of þe Iewes herde tesse þat Alexander was commaund toward Ierusalem, he gert call bifore hym all³² þe iewes þat ware in þe citee, and talde þan þe tythynges þat ware talde hym. And sythen he commandid þan þat þay schuld com to þe temple, and be þare in praynge Fastynges and wakyng & in sacrafice makyng vn-to godd, bisekand hym³⁶ of helpe & socoure. And þay did soo. And on þe nyghte nexte

¹ The *y* of *hym* for *hynd* is written over another letter scratched out.

² Twelve half lines space with miniature of a Q.

after, when þe Bischoppe hadd' made his sacrifice, and was
 lyand in prayers, he fell on slomeryng and ane Angelle appered
 vn-till hym, and sayd, 'Be noȝte ferð,' quop he, 'bot swythe
 4 gere araye honestly all þe stretis of (þe) citee, and caste open
 the zates, and warne all þe folke þat þay aray þanð in whitte
 clethyng, and thi-selfe & alle þe prestis reuesteȝ ȝow solempnely,
 and to-morne areȝ wendeȝ furthe of þe citee agaynes Alexander
 8 in processioun. For hym by-houeȝ * regne & be lorde of alle
 þe werlde. Bot at þe laste þe wrethe of godd' sail falle apouð
 hym.' When þe bischoppe wakened of his slepe, he called till
 hym þe iewes and talde þanð his reuelaciouð, and bad þanð do
 12 all als þe Angelle hade schewed hym. And þay did so. For
 þay arayed þe streteȝ of þe cetee and cledde þanð in whitte
 clethyng, and the bischope & þe prestis reueste þanð, and
 bathe thay and alle þe folke went furthe of þe citee till a place
 16 whare þe temple & all þe citee may be seen. And þare þay
 habade þe comyng of Alexander. And when Alexander come
 nere þis foresaid place, and sawe be-for hym swilke a multitude
 of folke, cledd' alle in whitte, and þe presteȝ arayed solempnely
 20 in riche vestymentis, and þe byschope also in his pontyficales
 and a mytir one his heued', and þare-apouð a plate of golde,
 whare-one was wretyn þe name of grete godd' Tetragramaton, he
 commaunded all his men þat þay schulde halde þanð by-hyud'
 24 hym, and habyde till he com to þanð. And he lighte off his
 horse, and went bi hym ane to þe iewes, And knelid' douw to
 þe erthe and wirchippede þe hye name of godd, þat he saw
 þare wretyn apouð þe bischopes heued'. And þanð alle þe iewes
 28 knelid' douw & saluste Alexander and cried all wit a voyce:
 'lyff lyffe,' quop þay, 'grete Alexander, lyffe, lyffe the gretteste
 Emperour of þe werlde, lyffe he þat sail ouer-comð all men and
 noȝte be ouercomeð. Prynce maste gloryous and maste worthy
 32 of all þe princeȝ þat regneȝ apouð erthe.' When þe kynges of
 Surry saw þis, þay hadd' grete wonder þare-off. And a prynce
 of Alexanders, þat highte Parmenouð, said vn-till Alexander:
 'Mi lorde þe Emperour,' quop he, 'we mervelle vs gretely þat
 36 þou, whanð all men wirchippeȝ and lowteȝ, wirchippeȝ here þe
 bischope of þe Iewes.' And Alexander ansuered, 'I wirchipe
 noȝte hym,' þis quop he, 'Bot Godd', whase state he presentetȝ.
 For when I was in Macedoyne, and vmbithoghte me, onð what

of the Lord appears by night to the High Priest and shows him how the city may be freed—and utters a prophecy.

* Leaf 6 bk.

The Bishop awakens, and, doing as the Angel bids, he and his people go forth to meet Alexander, the folk in white, the Bishop in full Pontificals.

Alexander, seeing them, dismounting, kneels and worships the Name of God.

Alexander, being asked, tells them that he wor-

ships not the High Priest but God, and this because of a vision promising him the conquest of Darius.

He goes into Solomon's Temple and sacrifices. The Bishop shows him the prophecy of Daniel.

* Leaf 7.

The Bishop of the Jews asks that the laws of their fathers might be granted.

Alexander conquers the rest of Judaea.

Darius asks the fugitive Syrians as to what kind of man Alexander was. They show him a parchment

wyse I myzte conquere Assye, I saw hym slepand, in swilk habite & in swylke araye; and he lete as he sett nozte by me, bot went baldely furthe bi me. And for I see nane¹ in swilke arraye bot hym, I suppose it be he þat I saw in my slepe. 4 And þarefore I trowe þat thurgh þe helpe of Godd I sail ouercom̄ Daryus, þe kyng of Perse, and his grete pryde fordo. And all thynges þat I caste in my hert fo[r] to do, it es my full triste þat thurgh his helpe I sail fulfill it, and wele byng s it to end. And þis es þe cause I wirchipped hym.' And when he hadd said thies wordes, he went in-to þe citee wit the bischope & þe prestez, and went in-to þe temple þat Salamoñ made. And as þe bischope teched hym he offred¹² sacrafice vn-to Godd. And þe bischope tuke Alexander in hande a buke of þe prophycye of Daniel*, in þe whilke he fande wretyn, þat a mañ of Grece sulde distruy þe powere of Perse². And Alexander was reghte gladde, supposynge þat 16 it was hym-selfe. And það he gaffe þe bischoppe & þe oper prestez grete gyftez & riche & precyous, And badd þe bischope ashe of hym what so he walde. And the bischope askede þat he walde giffe það leue to vse þe same lawes þat þaire 20 faderes vsed bifore það, and he graunted it. And það þe bischoppe askede þat³ walde giffe þe Iewes þat ware in Medee & in Babyloyn, leue for to vse þaire lawes, & he graunted hym þat & all oper thynges þat he walde aske. 24

⁴ Alexander thañ went fra Ierusalem, & lefte thare Andromac his Messagere, and hym selfe & his Oste went to þe oper citez þat ware in þe lande of Iudee, and at ilke a citee þat he come to, he was wirchippfully ressayued. In þe mene tyme þe 28 Surryens þat fledd fra Alexander, went to Perse, and talde þe emperour Darius how Alexander hadd done to það. And Darius spirred thaym of his stature & of his schappe, and þay schewed hym purtrayed in a parchemyñ skynñ þe ymage of 32 Alexander. And alsone als Darius sawe it, he dispysed Alexander bycause of his littill stature, and be-lyfe he gerte

¹ MS. *see nane* twice over: 'see nane, see nane.'

² A more open handwriting begins most clearly after *Perse*.

³ Supply *he* between *þat* and *walde*.

⁴ Eleven half lines space for a minia-

ture which is lacking. A square is roughly drawn out, and in the square the words '*hic incipit*' scribbled. Beside the miniature in the margin is written '*rex equitans*.'

write a *lettre* and sent it till Alexander. And *pare-wit* he sent hym a handball & oper certane lapez in scorne. And pis is þe tenour of þe *lettre* þat he sent till hym.

4 ¹ 'Darius, kyng of kynges, and lord of all erthely lordes euend like vnto soume schynande, wit þe goddez of Perse, vntill Alexander oure *seruand* we send. We hafe vnderstandeð now on late, whare-of we meruelle vs gretely, þat þou ert so raysed
8 in pride and vayne glorye, þat þou base semblede togedir a company of robbours and thefez oute of þe weste parties, and castez þe for to comð in-till oure parties, supposyng thurgh þanð for to ouer-sett and constreyne þe grete myghte & þe
12 vertue of þe percyens, whase streighte þou may neuer slokeð ne ouercome, suppose þou gadirde & sembled togedir all þe werlde. For I do þe wele to wiete þou myghte nerehand' alsonne nommer þe sternes of heuen, as þe folke of þe empire of Perse. Oure
16 goddez also ², * by whaym all þis werlde es gouerned & sustened, prayssez & commendeð oure name passyng all oper nacyns. 'Bot nozte wit-standyng pis; þou as a littill bisue & a dwerge, a halfe mañ & ortez of alle meñ, desyrand' to ouer-
20 passe þi littillnesse, rizte as a mouse crepez oute of hir hole, so þou ert crokeð out of þe lande of Sethym, wenyng wit a few rebawdez to conquere & optene þe landez of Perse brade & lange, & to ryotte & playe the in thaym as myesse douse in þe house
24 whare na cattes ere. Bot I þat priualy hase aspied thi gatez, when þou wenez moste seurely for to stertle abowte, I sall sterte apoñ þe & take þe; & so in wrechidnes sall thi dayes fouly hafe añ ende. 'A grete Foly þou dide for to take apoñ the
28 swylke a *presumpeyon*. It ware full faire to þe, if þou myghte bi oure lefe, wit oure beneuolence, occupie all anely þe rewme of Macedoyne, zeldyng þarefore till vs zereyly a certane tribute, if all þou couetid' nozte oure empire. Pare-fore it es gude þat
32 þou lese thi fonned *purposse*, and wende hame agayne, and sett the in thi moder knee. And lo, I sende the here a littill balle, wit þe whilke als a childe þou may play the. For þou ert bot a childe. It es mare semely þat þou vse childerz gammez þan
36 dedez of armes. 'We knawe wele thi pouert and thi nede, and

portrait and he despises him for his short stature.

Darius writes to Alexander, telling him how he has heard of his band of thieves and robbers, and that they could never overcome the power of Persia.

* Leaf 7 bk.

He tells Alexander of his meanness and wretchedness who wishes, like some mouse crept out of her hole when the cat is gone, to dispart him in the broad lands of Persia. But Darius shall pounce upon him when least awaited.

It were a great gift to leave him Macedonia alone, under tribute. He had better go home to his mother's knee. He sends him a play ball as more besecming him.

¹ Four half lines and miniature D with a king's head within.

² At bottom of leaf 7, first side, are

written in large characters indistinctly
... *kychyn ys att a Rio* ...

Does Alexander dream of subduing the rich Empire of Persia. He advises him to return home again or he will send a force to hang him as a thief on a gibbet.

pat þou hase vnnethes whare wit þou may sustene thi caytyside corse. Wenez þou, thañ, to brynge vnder thi subieccioñ the empyre of Darius. I say the by my Fader saule, þat in the rewme of Perse þare es so grete plente of golde, þat, & it were 4 gadirde to gedir on a hepe, It schulde passe þe clerenes of þe soñ. Whare-fore we commande the, and straitely enioyneþ the, þat þou leue thi sole pride and thi vayne glory, & tourne hame agayne to Macedoyne. And if þou wilt nozte soo, we sañ sende 8 to þe a multitude of meñ of armeþ swilke ane saw þou neuer, þe wilke sañ take þe, and hyngþ þe hye oñ a gebett as a traytour and a mayster of theefez: and nozte as þe son of Philippe.'

The messengers deliver Alexander the ball and the letters. His knights, hearing it read, are astounded and cast down.

¹ Wheñ þe messengers þat were sent fra Darius come to 12 king Alexander, þay gaffe hym the *lettres*, and þe. balle & oper certane Iapes, þat þe emperour sent hym in scorne. And Alexander tuke þe *lettres*, and gert rede it openly by-fore alle meñ, and Alexander knyghtes when þay herde þe tenour of þe 16 *lettres* ware gretly astonayde and wonder heuy. And wheñ Alexander sawe þañ so heuy by cause of þe *lettre*, he saide vn-to þam: 'a a, my worthy knyghtis,' quop he, 'are 3e fered for þe 20 prowde wordez þat are contened in Darius *lettres*, wate 3e noghte wele þat hundez, þat berkes* mekill, byteþ meñ noghte so sone, als doeþ hundes þat commez one meñ wit-outten berkyngþe. We trewe wele þe *lettre* says sothe of some thyngþez, þat es to ² saye, of þe grete plentee of golde, þat Darius sais he 24 hase. And þarefore late vs manly feghte wit hym and we sañ hafe þat golde. For þe grete multitude of his golde, als me thynke, schulde gare vs be balde and hardy for to fighte wit hym manly.' 28

* Leaf 8. Alexander consoles his men with the hope that what Darius says of the wealth of Persia may be true, and he exhorts them to fight for it manfully.

He bids his knights bind the messengers and leād them forth to be hanged. They lead them forth thus, but the messengers beg for mercy. Alexander tells them why he

When Alexander had saide thir wordez he badþ his knyghtis take the messengers of Darius and byndþ þaire handez bi-hynde þañ, & lede þañ furthe to the galowes, & hyngþ þañ. And þay tuke þe messengers & bande þañ, and began for to lede 32 þam furthe to þe galowes-warde, and þañ þe messengers bigañ for to crye rewfully vntill Alexander & sayd: 'A, A wirchipfull lorde & kyngþe', quop þay, 'whate hafe we trespaste, þat we schaffþ be haungede for oure kynges dedis'. And þañ kyng 36 Alexander ansuerd: 'þe wordez of 3our Emperour', quop he, 'gers me do þis, þat sent 3ow vn-to me, as vnto a theeffe, as þe

¹ Five half lines space with a miniature W.

² to in margin of MS.

lettre whilke 3e broghte witnessez': 'A, A lorde', quop þay, will hang them. They promise to make known to Darius Alexander's real character. King Alexander, loos- ing them, bids them come to meat. They propose to Alexander that they should deliver Darius into his hands. He scorn- fully re- jects it.

4 vs gaa, and we schall mak akuawen vntill hym 3our grete glory, 3our ryaltee, & 3our noblaye.'

það kyng Alexander badd' his knyghtis lowse það, and bryng það in-till his hauffe, to þe mete. And thare he made 8 það a grete feste & a ryall. And as þay satt at the mete, þir messangers saide vn till Alexander, 'lorde,' quop þay, 'if it be plesynge to 3our hye maiestee sendez with vs a thowsand of doghty meñ of armes, and we sall delyuer það þe 12 Emperour Darius,' and Alexander ansuerde agayne & said² 'Sittes stille', quop he, '& makes 3ow mery. For I tell 3ow in certayne, for þe betrayinge of 3our kyng, I will noghte graunt 3ow a knyghte wit 3ow'. Apon þe morne, 16 Alexander gart write a lettre vn-to Darius, whareoffe þe tenour was this.

þe letter of Alexandere³

1⁴ Alexander, the soñ of Philippe & of qwene Olympias, vn-to Darius, kyng of þe land þat schynes⁵ wit þe goddez of Perse, 20 we sende. If we graythely & sothefastly be-halde oure selfe þare es na thyng þat we here hafe þat we may bi righte calle ours, bot all it es lent vs for a tyme. For alle we þat ere whirlede aboute wit þe whele of fortune, now ere we broghte 24 fra riches in-to pouerte: now fra myrthe & ioy in-to Sorowe & heynesse; and agaynwardez: and now fra heghte, we are plunged in-to lawnesse. Þare-fore þare schulde na mañ þat es sett in hye degre triste to mekill in his hyennesse, that, thurgh 28 pride & vayne glorye, he schulde despysse þe dedis of oper meñ lesse * þan he. For he wate neuer how sone þe whele of fortune may turne abowte, and easte hym doune to lawe degre, þat sitte; hye oñ-lofte: and rayse hym to hye wirchipe and 32 grete noblaye þat bifore was pore and in lawe degre. And þarefore the aughte to thyнке grete schame, þat swilke a worthy emperour as meñ haldez the, schulde sende swylke

Alexander, writing, re- minds Darius of the unstead- fastness of earthly wealth. No man of high degree should scorn those lower, for he never knows when the wheel of Fortune may turn about.

* Leaf 8 bk.

Therefore Da- rius should be ashamed that he, a great

¹ sent in margin of MS.

² & said in margin.

³ The rubric is wrongly placed in the MS. after *dignytes*, p. 24, i.e. at the end of

the letter.

⁴ Five half lines with miniature A.

⁵ *schynes* in margin of MS.

man, behaves so to Alexander, a little man.

The Undying Gods do not associate with men that die.

Alexander comes as a mortal man to fight Darius. Even if Darius overcome

Alexander he shall win nothing by it, for he is but a little man and a thief.

Darius's boasts of the Persians of old have heartened them to attack the Empire.

The play ball that was sent was also a forecast of his rule over the world.

The other toys likewise foretell his rule over all men. By the same, Darius has sent tribute to Alexander.

The letter is taken to Darius. He then marches on Persia.

* Leaf 9.

Darius, receiving

a message vnto me so littill a mañ and so pore. For þou ert euen lyke to þe sonne, as thi selfe says, sittande in þe trone of Nitas wit þe goddeꝝ of Perse. Bot goddeꝝ þat euermare are, liffaunde & neuermare dyeꝝ, deyneꝝ noꝝte for to hafe þe felas- 4
chipe of dedely meñ. Sekerly I am a dedely mañ; and to þe I come as to a dedely man, for to feghte wit the. Bot þou þat arte so grete & so gloryous & callez thi selfe vndedely, þou sañt wyne na thyng of me, if alle þou hafe þe ouerhande of me. 8
For þou hase ouercommen bot a littill mañ, and a theeffe³ als þou sayse. And if I hafe þe ouerhande ouer the, It sañt be to me þe gretteste wirchipe þat euere byfell me, for als mekill als I sañt hafe þe victorie of þe worthieste emperour of þe werlde. Bot 12
þare þou saide, þat, in þe rewme of Perse, es so grete plentee of golde, þou hase scharpede oure hertiz, and made mare balde for to feghte with the, & for to wyne þat golde; for to relese oure pouerte wit-añt, & putte away our nede whilke 16
þou says we hafe. In þat also, þat þou sent vs a hande-baſte and oper barne-laykaynes, þou prophicyed riꝝte, and betakent bi-fore, thynges þat we trewe, thurgh goddeꝝ helpe, sañt faſte vn-till vs. By þe rowndenes of þe baſte, we vnderstande 20
all the werld aboute vs, þe whilke sañt faſte vnder oure subieccion. Bi þe taue of þe laykanes þat þou sent vs, þe whilke es made of wandeꝝ and crukeꝝ donwardeꝝ; at þe ouerend, we vnderstand þat all þe kynges of þe werlde, and all þe grete lordeꝝ, 24
sañt lowte till vs. Bi þe toper laykañ, þat es of golde, and hase apon it, as it ware, a manneꝝ hede, we vnderstande þat we sañt hafe þe victorie of all meñ and neuer be ouercommen. And þou þat ert so grete & so myghty hase now onwardeꝝ sent 28
vs trybute, in als mekeñ als þou sent vs a handbaſte, and þir oper thynges þat I rehersed by-fore, the whilke conteneꝝ in þañd so grete dignyteꝝ.'

¹ When þis lettre was wreten, Alexander called till þe mes- 32
sangers of þe Emperour of Perse, and gaffe þañd riche gyftes and betuke þam þe lettre, and badð þañd bere it to þaire lorde. And þañd Alexander sembled his Oste, and by-gañd for to wende towarde Perse. When the messengers of Perse come to þe 36
emperour þay talde hym of þe grete ryaltee of kyng Alexander * and tuke hym the letters þat Alexander sent hym. And

¹ Four half lines space with miniature W.

þe emperour garte rede þam. And when he herd þam redde he was wonder wraþe, and sent a *lettre* helyue vn-till twa grete lordez that hadd þe *gouernance* of þe empire vnder hym sayand to þam on this wiese.

Alexander's letter, writes to his two great lords,

¹ Darius kyng of kynges and lorde of lordes vntill oure trewe legeþ *Primus* & *Antyochns*, gretynge and ioy. We here tell þat Alexander, *Philippe* sonne of *Macedoyne*, es so hegho raysede in pryde, þat he es rebeſte agaynes vs, & es commen in-till *Asye*, and hase destroyed it vtterly. And zitt hym thynke nozte this ynoghe, bot he *purposeþ* hym for to come nere vs, and do þe same till oþerre cuntreþ of oure empire as he hase done tyll *Asye*. Wharefore we comande zowe o payne of *zour* legeance, þat ze semle þe grete men & þe worthy of oure empyre, wit oþer of our trewe legeþ; and, in all þe haste þat ze may, gase & counters zone childe, takand hym, and bryngand hym bi-fore oure presence, þat we may lasche hym wele, als a wanton childe schulde be: and clethe hym in *purpoure*; & so send hym till his moder *Olympias* wele chastyede. For it semeþ nozte to be a feghter: but for to vse childe gammeþ.

telling them of Alexander's boldness and bidding them take him prisoner so that Darius may whip him as a naughty child and send him home to his mother.

² Thire twa lordes *Primus* and *Antyochns*, when þay hadde redde this *lettre* of þe emperour, þay wrate agayne vntill him on this wyse. 'Vn-to *Darius*, kyng of kynges, grete godd, *Primus* & *Antiochns*, seruyce þat þay kañ do. To *zour* hegh maieste we make it aknaweñ, þat þe childe *Alexandere*, whilke ze speke off, hase all vtterly destroyed *zour* cuntree. And we sembled a grete multytude of folke, and faughte wit hym; bot he hase discomfit vs, and we were fayne for to flee. For unnethe myghte any of vs wyne awaye wit þe lyfe. Þarefore we þat ze say ere helpers vnto zowe, besekeþ *zour* hye maistee that ze send sunñ socoure till vs *zour* trewe leges.' Whenn *Darius* hadde redde þis *lettre*, þare come anoþer messenger till hym and talde hym þat *Alexander* and his *Oste* hade lugged þam appon the water of *Strume*. And whenn *Darius* herd þat he wrate anoþer *lettre* vntill *Alexander*, of whilke þis was þe tenour.

Primus and *Antiochns* reply, telling of their utter defeat at the hands of *Alexander* and begging for help.

³ *Darius*, kyng of kynges, and lorde of lordes, vn-till oure seruande *Alexander*. Thorowte all þe werlde þe name of

Darius is told of the camping of *Alexander* on the river *Strume*.

¹ Space for four lines.

² Miniature and M space for four lines.

³ Four half lines and space with a miniature D, with king's head within.

Alexander
telling him
to retire
before his
vengeance
fall upon
him.

* Leaf 9 bk.

He sends
him also a
token of
the num-
ber of his
own people.

They bring
Alexander
the letter.
But he
finds
another
meaning
for the
tokens.

He hears of
the heavy
sickness of
his mother.
Altho' cast
down by
the news
he writes a
letter to
Darius.
He tells
him that
for other
reasons he
is forced
unwilling-
ly to re-
turn, but
bids him
not put it

Darius es praysed & commended. Oure goddeȝ also hase it
wreiteñ in thaire bukes. How thañ durste þou be so balde,
for to passe so many waters, and seeȝ, Mountaynes & craggeȝ,
for to werraye agaynes oure royalle maiestee. A grete wirchipe 4
me thynke it * ware to þe, if þou myghte mawgre oures, hafe
in possessioun þe kyngdome of Macedoyne all anely, wit-owtten
mare. Thare-fore the es better amend þe of thi mysededis, þan
we take swilke wreke appoñ the, þat oþer meñ take bisne þare- 8
by, seiñ alle þe erthe wit-owtten oure lordchipe, may be callede
wedowe. Torne agayne þare-fore, we consaile þe, in-to thyñ
awenñ cuntree, are oure wrethe and oure wreke fatte apoñ
þe. Neuer-þe-lesse, þat oure wirchippe & oure grete noblaye 12
be sumwhate kuawenñ to þe, we sende the a malefull of
cheseboffe sede, in takennyng þare-of. Luke if þou may
uombir & telle all þir cheseboffe sedeȝ, & if þou do þatt
þañ may þe folke of oure oste be nowmerd. And if þou 16
may noȝte do þat oure folke may noȝte be nowmerd. Þare-
for turnee hame agayne in-to þi cuntree and lese þi foly
þat þou hase byguñ, and take na mare apoñ þe swilke a
presumpcion, for I tell þe we haffe meñ of armes wit-oute 20
nowmmere'.

¹ When þe Messengers of Darius come till Alexander, þay
tuk hym þe lettre and þe malefull of chesseboffe sedeȝ,
Alexander þañ gerte rede þe letter. And sytheñ he putt 24
his hand in þe male, and tuke of þe chesseboffe sedeȝ & putt
in his mouthe, & chewed it, & said, 'I see wele', quop he, 'þat
he hase many meñ, bot þay are riȝte softe as this sedeȝ are'.
In þe mene tyme þare come a Messenger till Alexander fra 28
Macedoyne: and talde hym þat his Moder Olympias was grefe
seke. And [when] Alexander herd þis, he was wonder heuy.
Neuer þe lesse, he wrate vn to Darius a lettre, þat spakke
oñ this wyse. 32

² Alexander þe soñ of Philippe & of qwene Olympias vn-to
Darius kyng of Perse, we sende. We do þe wele to wiete
þat we hafe herde certane tythynggeȝ, whilke gers vs agayneȝ
oure will do þat we now sañ saye. Bot trow þou noȝte þat we 36
for fere or dowte of thi pride and þi vayne glorye turne hame
agayne now till oure awenñ cuntre, Bot all anely for to vesett

¹ Four lines space with miniature W.

² Three lines space.

oure Moder Olympias, whilke lygges grefe seke. Bot wete þou wele, wit in schorte tyme, we schall haste vs agayne, wit a grete nowmere of fresche knyghtis. And rizte als þou sent vs a
 4 malefull of chessebolle sedeꝝ; so we sende þe here a littill peper. For þou schulde witte þat rizte as þe scharpenes of þis littill peper passeꝝ þe multitude of þe chessebolle sedeꝝ, rizte so þe grete multitude of þe Persyenes shall be ouer-comend wit a fewe
 8 knyghtis of Macedoynе.'

¹This *lettre* be-kende Alexander to þe knyghtis of Darius, þe peper also, & bad þam here þam to þe emperour. And he gaffe þam grete gyftes and riche, and sent þam furthe.
 12 And þam he turnede * agayne wit his Oste towarde Macedoynе.

There was þe same tyme a wonder wyse mañ of werre þe whilke highte Amorcea, and he was prynce-werres in Araby, and lay þare wit a grete multitude of meñ in awayte of
 16 Alexander & his Oste. And wheñ he herde tell of þe commyng of Alexander, he redied hym for to kepe hym. And wheñ þay mett, þay faught to-geder all þe daye fra þe morne till þe eueñ. And so þay dide all þase thre deyes. And þare was so mekill
 20 folke dede in þat bataile, þat þe sone wexe eclipte & wit-drewe his lighte, vggande for to see so mekill scheddyng of blude. Bot at laste þe Percyenes ware so thikke-falde felled to þe grounde, þat þaire prynce Amorcea turned þe bakke & fledd,
 24 and vnnetheꝝ myghte wynd awaye, and a fewe wit hym. So hastyly fledd Amorcea, þat he come nerehand alsonе to Darius, as his messagers did þat come fra Alexander, and fand Darius haldañ þe *lettre* in his hande, þat Alexander sent hym,
 28 and spirrande what Alexander did wit þe chessbolle sedeꝝ. And þe messagers ansuerd & said: 'He tuke of þe chessbolle sedeꝝ', quop þay, 'and chewed of þam, & said. I see wele,' quop he, 'þat Darius hase many meñ, bot þay are wonder softe';
 32 And than Darius tuk of þe peper, þat Alexander sent, and putt in his mouthe and chewed it. And when he felide þe strenghe of it, and þe grete hete, he syghede sare, and saide: 'Alexander knyghtis', quop he, 'are bot fewe, bot and þay be
 36 als strange in þam selfe, as þis peper es in it selfe, þay shall fynde nane in þis werlde þat may agaynestande þam.' And þan ansuerde Amorcea & saide, 'Forsothe, lorde', quop he, '3e

down to his own vainglory or pride. He shall come again with a fresh host. And he sends him in return a little pepper. He dispatches Darius's messengers back with the letter. * Leaf 10. Amorcea tries to ambuscade Alexander.

They fought three whole days till the sun grew dark with dread, seeing the number of the slain. So many of the Persians were slain that at last Amorcea had to flee. He fled so quickly to Darius that he found him reading Alexander's letter. Darius sighs at the sharpness of the pepper.

¹ Five lines space with miniature A.

say sothe, Alexander hase few knyghtis, bot þay ere strange, þat hase slaen my knyghtis þat ware so many, so þat¹ vnnetheȝ myghte I eschappe owte of þaire handeȝ.' Alexander, if alle² he hade þe victorye of his enemys, he bare hym neuer þe hiere þare-fore, ne empridede hym noȝte þare-of. Bot bathe Percyeneȝ & the Macedoyns þat ware slaen, he gert brynge to beryell. And þan he come wit his Oste in-to Cecill, whare many Citeȝ submyt þan̄ vñ-till hym, and of that rewme, 8 þare went wit hyñ: xvij. M. feghtyngē meñ. And fra thethyñ he come till Ysaury, þe whilke, wit-owtten̄ any agayne standyngē, was ȝolden vntill hym. And Alexander went vp apoū þe Mounte Taurus, and fande þare a citee þat meñ callede 12 Persypolis, and thare he tuk wit hym a certane of meñ of Armes, and went so thurgh Asye, and wañ many Citeȝ. And so he come in-to Frigy, and went in-to þe temple of þe soñ, and thare he made sacrafyce to þe soñ. Fra thethyñ, he come 16 to a reuere, þat es called Stamandra, and þare he said till his men. 'Blyste mote ȝe be',* quop he, 'þat hase getyñ þe comendacions & þe praysyngēȝ of þe gude docteur Homerus', and aue of his meñ ansuerde & said, 'Mi lorde kyng', quop 20 he, 'Me thynke I may sauely writte ma praysyngēȝ, & lonyngēȝ of the, þan̄ Homerus did of þan̄ þat distruyede þe Citee of Trayane. For þou hase done in þi tyme ma wirchipfull thyngeȝ, þan̄ euer did þay.' And Alexander [ansuerd,] & said, 24 'Me ware leuer,' quop he, 'be a wyse manes disciple þan for to hafe þe lonyngēȝ of Achilles.' After this he remouede wit his Oste into Macedoynne, & fande his Modir Olympias wele couerd̄ of hir sekenes, and suggournede þare wit her a while. 28 And than̄ he ordeyned hyñ for to wende agayne into Persy, And keste hym for to logge at a Citee, þat meñ calleȝ Abandryañ. The meñ of þe Citee, when̄ þay herde telle of his commyngē, þay speredē þe ȝates of þe Citee, and wachede þe citee 32 one ilke a syde. And when̄ Alexander saw þat, he went & assaillede þe Citee. And þe burgeȝ of þe Citee, when̄ þay sawe þat þe citee was noȝte strange ynoghe of þe selfe, for to agaynstande þe assawte of þaire enemys, þay criede till 36 Alexander & saide: 'Kyng Alexander,' quop þay, 'we spered̄

Alexander's humility and courtesy to his fallen foes.

His further march.

Alexander sacrifices to the Sun in Phrygia.

* Leaf 10 bk.

Alexander answers a flatterer, he had rather be a wise man's disciple than have the praises of Achilles.

Alexander marches again towards Persia.

The citizens of Abandria shut their gates against him. But

¹ 'þat' almost blotted out by stain in MS.

² 'alle' almost blotted out by same stain as above.

noȝte þe ȝates of [the] citee to þat entent for to agayneſtande
 the, Bot allanly for þe drede of Darius, kyng of Perſe, þe
 whilke as it was tolde tiſt vs, es purpoſſede for to ſend his
 4 meñ hedir, for to deſtroye vs & oure citee.' And þaũ Alexander
 ſaid vnto þaũ agayn. 'Iſſe ȝe wiſt,' quop he, 'þat we diſtroy
 ȝow noȝhte, openeȝ ȝour ȝates, and when I haſe made an ende
 wit Darius, þaũ ſaũ I come agayne, & ſpeke wit ȝowe.' And
 8 þaũ þe Citazenes opened þe ȝates. Fra thetheñ þay went to
 Commoliehe. And fra thethyñ to Biloy, and ſo to Caldiple.
 Syne þay come¹ tiſt a grete reuere, whare Alexander Oſte hadd
 grete defaute of vetaiſs, and þaũ his knyghtis murnede gretey
 12 and ſaid, 'Oure horſes,' quop þay, 'fayleȝ vs ay mare & mare.'
 Alexander anſuerd, & ſaid, 'A A, my doghty knyghtis,' quop
 he, 'þat ȝitt heder-towardeȝ haſe in werreȝ ſuffred many
 perilliſs & mekiſt diſeſſe, ere ȝe nowe in deſpeyre of ȝour hele
 16 for þe failynge of ȝour horſeȝ, ſaũ we noȝte gete horſeȝ ynowe,
 and we lyſſe & haſe qwert, and if we dye we ſaũ haſe na nede
 of horſe, na þay may do us na prophete. Haſte we vs þare-fore
 in aũ þat we maye to þe place whare² we ſaũ gete horſeȝ wit-
 20 owtteñ nowmer, and vetaiſſis alſo, bathe for oure ſelfe & for oure
 horſeȝ.' When he hadd aũ ſaide, þay went furthe and come tiſt
 a place þat es called Luctus, þat es to ſaye wepynge,*³ whar þay
 fande vetaiſſis ynoghe, and mete ynoghe for þaire horſe. Fra
 24 thethyñ þay remoued & come tiſt a place þat hatt Trigagantes,
 and þare þay lugeñ þaũ. And Alexander went in-to a temple
 of Apollo; whare alſe he aghteled to haſe made Sacraſſice, and
 haſe hadd anſuere of that godd of certane thynges þat he walde
 28 haſe aſchede. Bot a woman þat hiȝte ȝacora, whilke was preſte
 of þat temple, talde Alexander þat þaũ was noȝte þe tyme of
 anſuere. On þe Morne Alexander come to þe temple & made
 hiſ ſacraſſice. And Apollo ſaid tiſt Alexander, 'Hercules,'
 32 quop he. And Alexander anſuered, & ſaid, 'Now þat þou
 calleȝ me Hercules,' quop he: 'I ſee wele þat aũ thyñ anſuers
 ere falſe.' Fra thethyñ Alexander went till a citee þat es called
 'Thebea, and ſaid vn-to þe folke of þe citee: 'Sendeȝ me furthe,'
 36 quop he, 'fourē hundreth knyghtis, wele armed, for to wend wit

fearing
 him they
 tell him
 that they
 had done
 ſo to with-
 ſtand Da-
 rius. And
 they open
 their gates.

Alexander's
 knights
 complain
 that their
 horſes are
 failing
 them.
 Alexander
 exhorts
 them to
 endure to
 the end.

* Leaf 11.

Alexander
 gets a lying
 answer of
 Apollo,
 who calls
 him Her-
 cules.

Alexander
 calls on
 the The-
 beans to

¹ MS. *went* crossed through by the scribe, and replaced by *come* in MS. itself.

² *whare* corrected from *þare* in MS.

³ On leaf 11 a more regular, orderly, and distinctive handwriting begins in the MS.

send him help. But they, refusing, shut their gates.

Alexander jeers at them.

He sends four thousand archers to shoot down the watches on the wall, two hundred miners to mine the walls, a hundred to burn down the gates, and four hundred engineers to batter the walls in. Himself with the rest lay by to help them when necessary.

The story of Cicesterus and Hismon.

* Leaf 11 bk.

Alexander refuses mercy to the city, and raises it to the earth.

Clitomarus, one of the citizens, fares away with the conquerors.

The Thebeans ask

vs in suppoellyng of vs.' And when þe Thebeans herd thir wordeþ, þay spereð þe ȝates of þe citee, for to agayne-stande Alexander, and went to þe walles, and cried lowde þat Alexander myghte here : ' Alexander,' quop þay, ' bot if [þou] gaa hethyð fra vs, we 4
 sall do the a velany, & thi knyghtis also.' When Alexander herde this, he smyled & saide : ' ȝe Thebeens,' quop he, ' þat ere so mekill praysed & commended of strenghe, Spere ȝe ȝour ȝates & saise ȝe will feghte wit me ; þare es na doghety mañ of armez 8
 þat coueteþ for to haue wirehiþ and loos ; þat will close hynd witin walles, bot fightes wit his enemys manly in þe felde.' When he hadd saide thir wordeþ, he bad þat foure thowsandeþ archers sulde gaa abowte þe citee wit paire bowes, & lay apouð 12
 þaund wit arowes þat stode apouð þe walles. And he bad two hundreth meñ of armes ga to þe walles, and myne þaund doune, and a hundrethe he bad take fyrebraudeþ, & gaa to þe ȝates & brynne þaund. And he ordeynde oper foure hundreth meñ, 16
 for to bett dound þe walles wit Sewes of werre, Engynes and Gonnes & oper maner of Instrumenteþ of werre. And hym selfe, and þe remenant of þe oste lay nere þaund to socour þaund when þay hadd nede. And belyfe fra þay hadd gyffend assawte to þe 20
 citee, þe ȝates ware brynt, & mekill folke was slayne witin þe citee, Sum witi arowes, sum witi stanes of Engynes ; þe Fire also by-gaund for to sett in houseþ witi-in þe citee, & rayse a grete lowe. In þe Oste of Alexander was, þe same tyme, a mañ þe 24
 whilke highte Cicesterus, a grete enemy to þe citee. He, when he sawe þe citee bryne, made righte mery.* Bot a mañ of the citee þat highte Hismon, when he saw his cuntree þusgates be distruyed, come and fesse one knees be-fore Alexander, and 28
 bigaund for to synge a sange of Musyke & of murnyge witi an Instrument of Musike, Supposyng þare-by for to drawe Alexanders herte to Mercy, & styrre hym to hafe rewthe on þe citee. Alexander be-helde hym, & sayde : ' Maister,' quop he, ' whare- 32
 to syngeþ þou me þis sange ? ' ' A A lorde,' quop Hismon, ' to luke ȝife I myzte styrre þi herte to hafe mercy ouð þe citee.' And þaund Alexander was wonder wrathe, and bad dyunge þe walles of þe cetee dound to þe harde erthe. And when þay had so done 36
 þay remoued & went þaire way, and ane of þe worthieste meñ of þe citee, þe whilke hyghte Clitomarus, went witi þaund in company. Bot þe Thebeens þat ware lefte affire þe birnyng

of þe citee went to þe temple of Apollo, and askede weþer euer
 mare þaire citee sulde be repaireld agayne. Apollo ansuerde,
 & said, 'he þat schaff bygge þis citee agayne sall hafe thre
 4 victories. And whēd he hase geteð thre victories, he sall
 onane come & repareð this citee, and bigge it agayne, also
 wele, als euer it was.'

¹ Alexander fra þe citee of Thebe, went to Corynthe, and þare
 8 come tið hym certane lordes, prayand hym þat he walde come
 & see a wrestillynge. And he graunted þauid. And to þis Ilke
 wrestillynge þare come folke witowttenowmer. And whēd
 all meid were gadirde, Alexander saide: 'whilk of 3owe,' quop
 12 he, 'sall gaa & be-gynd þis playe'. Clitomarus þauid, of whaynd
 I spake bifore, knelid¹ bi-fore þe kyng, & saide: 'lorde,' quop
 he, ' & 3e wolle vouche-saffe to giffē me leue, I will be-gynd.'
 And Alexander bad hym ga to. And Clitomarus went in-to þe
 16 place, and þe firste mauid þat come in his hande, at the first
 tourne he threwe hym wide opeid. And Alexander said vntill
 hym: 'Caste thre meid.' quop he, ' & þou sall be coround'.
 Þauid þare come anoþer mauid to Clitomarus and vnnethe; he come
 20 in his hande; whēd he was casteð wyde open. And one þe
 same wyse he seruede þe thirde. And þan Alexander gart sett
 oñ his heuede a precious coround, and þe kynges seruaunde;
 spirrede hym what his name was. 'My name,' quop he, 'es wit
 24 owttēd citee'. When Alexander herde þat he saide vn-till
 hym: 'Thou noble wristiller,' quop he, 'whi arte þou callede wit
 owttēd citee.' 'Wirehipfulst emperour,' quop he, 'be-fore þat 3e
 werede þe emperours Dyademe, I hadde a citee full of folke;
 28 & of reches. Bot now, sene 3e come to this astate & þis
 dignytee, I am spoylede & priuede of my citee.' And whēd
 [he] herde this, he wiste wele þat he ment of þe citee of
 Thebe. And þan he garte his sergeante; * make a crye that
 32 [he] hadd¹ giffen Clitomarus leue for to repairelle þe citee
 of Thebes. Fra Corinthe, Alexander and his oste remowed¹ tið
 a citee þat highte Platea, of þe whilke a mauid þat highte Scras-
 geras was prynee. And Alexander went to þe temple of Diane,
 36 and fande þare a womauid preste, þe whilke was a maydeid, & scho
 was araied¹ lyke preste; of þat tymme. And whēd [scho] sawe
 Alexander, scho saide vn-till hym: 'Alexander,' quop scho, 'þou

an oracle of
 Apollo as to
 whether
 their city
 should ever
 be rebuilt.
 The answer
 is, it shall
 be rebuilt
 by a three-
 fold victor.
 Alexander
 is invited
 to a wrest-
 ling.
 He asks
 who will
 begin.

Clitomarus
 begs the
 favour of
 so doing.

He wins
 once.
 Alexan-
 der's pro-
 mise.
 He wins
 twice.
 He wins
 thrice.
 Crowning
 him they
 ask him
 his name.
 He
 answers,
 'One with-
 out City.'
 How it be-
 fell with
 his answer.

* Leaf 12.

From
 Corinthe
 they go to
 Platea and
 the Tem-
 ple of
 Diana.
 The maid-
 en Priestess

¹ Five half lines space with miniature A, with knight within.

and her
prophecy.

Scras-
sageras
curses the
priestess,
but it
avails him
nothing.

He falls
from his
lordship
and flees to
Athens, and
prevails on
them to
help him.

Alexander
marches on
Athens.

The letter
of Alex-
ander to
the Athe-
nians, tell-
ing of his
deeds and
conquests.

He asks of
them but
ten philo-

arte welcomme. Pou schaff conquere all þe werlde.' One þe morne Sc rassageras went to þe same temple, and alsone als þe preste sawe hym, scho saide vn-till hym: ' Sc rassageras,' quop scho, ' what thou wit-in a schorte while þou schaff be priued of 4 þe lordchip þat þou now hase?' And when he herde þis he was righte wrathe wit hir, & saide, ' þou arte nozte worthy,' quop he, ' for to be preste here. Alexander come to þe zisterdaye, and þou prophicyed hym gude; And to me þou sais, þat I schaff lose all 8 my lordechipe.' And scho ansuerd, & saide, ' Beez nozte angry to me,' quop scho: ' for all þis buse be fulfilled, and nathyng pare of lefte ne ouerhippede.' A littill after it felle þat Alexander was gretely angrede at Sc rassageras, and tuke fra 12 hym his lordchipe, & Sc rassageras went to þe cite of Athenez, and sare wepande he complenede hym to þe citazenes of Athenez & talde þan how þat Alexander hadd priued hym of his lordechipe. And þan þe Atheneanes ware wonder [wrathe] towards 16 Alexander, and made grete boste & manace, þat þay schold ryse agaynes hym, bot if he restorede Sc rassageras agayne till his lordechipe. Alexander remowed his Oste fra Platea to þe citee of Athenes, and when [he] herde telle þat þe Athenens ware 20 wrathe till hym-ward, and manaced hym, he wrate vn-to þan a lettre þat spak one this wyse.

' Alexander, þe son of Philippe and of qwene Olympias, vn to the Athenenes, gretynge. Fra þe tyme þat oure Fadir was 24 dedde, & we were sett in þe Trone of his dingnytee, we went into þe weste Marches, whare all þe folkez þat duellez thare for þe maste party zalde þan vn-till vs wit-owtten stresse. Fra þe citee of Rome to þe weste see occyane, all meñ sub- 28 mytte þan vn-till vs þat wit oure awen fre will we hafe taken þan 2 till oure grace. And thase þat walde nozte submytt þan till vs wit fairenes, we hafe destruyed³ þan & paire citez, and doungeñ þan down to þe erthe. And now þis oper 32 daye as we went fra Macedoyne & passed thurgh Asye: bi þe cite of Thebe, þe Thebeyens despysed vs, & lete as þay sett nozte by vs. Bot onane we garte þair pryde falle, and de-

¹ Four half lines space with minia-
ture A.

² Here the scribe first has written 'to
grace' and then erased it, substituting as

in text.

³ The *uy* in *destruyed* has been substi-
tuted for *uu* by the same scribe.

strued bathe þan̄ & thaire citee. And þare-fore we write vn-to 3ow; that 3e sende vs tē philosophres þat be wyse, * by þe whilke we may be encensede and conselled. For oper thynge
 4 wif we nane aske 3ow, Bot afte anely þat þe halde vs for 3our lorde & 3our kyng. And 3if 3e wif no3te submytt 3owe vntill vs, 3ow buse oper be strangere þan̄ we, or elfs submytt yow to sum lordechīp̄, þat be strangere þan̄ oures.

8 ¹The Athenyenes redd̄ þis lettre and þan þay bigan to erye one highte. And ane, þat highte Eschifte, stode vp amange; þan̄, and said: 'It es fully my conseil', quop he, 'þat we oīd na wise assent [to thise] worde; of Alexander.' Alle þe folke þan̄
 12 þat was gadirde þare, prayed þe philosophre Demostines, þat he walde tell þan̄ his conselle, as touchynge þat matere. And he stude vp, & bad̄ all meīd be still. And þan̄ he said̄ vn-to þan̄. 'Sirs,' quop he, 'I pray 3ow takes tent vn-to my worde; &
 16 herkenes gudly what I saff say. If 3e fele 3ow of power, for till agayne-stande Alexander, & to surprise hym, þan̄ feghtes wit hym manly, and obeys no3te till his worde;. And if 3e suppose 3e be no3te strange yuoghe to feghte wit hynd þan̄
 20 here; hynd, and obeys vn-till hynd. 3e knawe wele, þat als oure eldirs telles vs, 3erises was a grett kyng, & a myghty, and many victories he gatt. And neuer þe lesse in Ellada he suffrede grete meschefe. Bot he, this Alexander, hase done
 24 many batailles, in þe whilke he suffrede neuer disese bot alwaye had þe ouerhande. Þe Thirienes, I pray 3ow, ware [þai] no3te balde knyghtes and strange, and all þaire lyfe hade bene execercysede in Armes? And whate profitede þan̄ þaire strenghe?
 28 Þe Thebienes also þat were so wyse, and so grete exercyse hadde in armes, fra þe firste tyme þat þe citee was bygged, whare-off seruede þaire grete witt þan̄, and þaire grete strength, when̄ Alexander assailede þan̄? Þe Poliponiens faghte wit Alexander,
 32 bot þay myghte na while agayne-staude his men of armes. Bot alsoīd þaire² ware disconfit and slaēd. It es no3te vnkawen vn-to 3owe, how many citee; castells & townne; for fere submittis þan̄ vn-till hynd wit-owtten̄ any assawte gyffynge. Þarefore,
 36 it es no3te my consaile þat 3e be heuy, ne wrathe till Alexander

sophers to teach him * Leaf 12 bk.

rendering homage to him; or else must it either be stronger than Alexander or dependent on some stronger state.

The speech of Aeschylus against Alexander. The Athenians beg counsel of Demosthenes. He tells them if they feel themselves strong enough to resist, but if not then let them submit.

He compares Alexander and Xerxes together.

He narrates Alexander's victorious campaign.

He advises them not to be froward towards Alexander.

¹ Four half lines space with miniature T.

² MS. reads 'þaire' for þay. This form

recurs on p. 55, l. 29. Cf. Icelandic þeir. There is nothing left out nor is it a misprint.

Alexander is a wise and reasonable man, neither would he have put Scraſſageras out of his Lordſhip except for treaſon againſt him.

The Athenians commend this

* Leaf 13.

counſel greatly and ſent tribute but no philoſophers.

He hears of the ſpeeches of both Aeſchylus and Demothe- nes.

He writes them a letter.

The Letter of Alexander to the Athenians.

He had purpoſed a philoſophic diſpute with them, and have ſhown them his friends.

But their deeds ſhewed otherwiſe. Whoſo of them riſes againſt him, he will make an example of. They, as knaves, think ill and fear ill.

He had put S. out of office for treaſon. They have deſpiſed his demand for ten philoſophers.

for Scraſſageras. For all men knowes wele þat Alexander es a wonder wyſe mañ & a warre, & a mañ þat gouernes hym by reſoñ; and þare-fore 3e may wele wete, he walde nozte putt Scraſſageras oute of his lordechipe upon leſſe þañ forſett vn-4 till hym.' When þe Athenyenes had herde þir worde3, þay commedid gretly the conſeille of Demostines, and than they ordeyned a corouñ of golde þe weghte of .i. pounde, and ſent Meſſangers þarewit, and wit tribute vn-till Alexander, bot 8 philoſophres ſent þay nane. * And when þire Meſſangers come till Alexander, þay gaſſe hym þe corouñ, and þe tribute, þat þe Athenyenes ſent hym, and talde hym þat þay had highte hym a grete nowmer of catelle. And when Alexander had herd þam, 12 he vnderſtode wele þe conceit of Eſchilus þat conceit þe Athenyenes to agayneſtand hym, and alſo þe conceit of Demostenes that conceit þañ þe contrary, and þañ he wrote a lettre to þañ whare-of the Tenoure was this. 16

¹ 'Alexander þe ſon of Philippe and quene Olympias, for þe name of kynge wiſſ we nozte take apon vs, before we haſe oure enemys vnder oure ſubiencion: vn-to þe Athenyenes gretyng. It es nozte oure entent to come in 3our citee wit oure oſte, 20 Bot allaily to come & diſpuyte wit 3our philoſophres, and to aſche þañ certane queſtyons, Oure purpoſſe was alſo to haſe declared for oure trewe legge3 & oure gude Frende3. Bot 3our dede3 proues þe contrary, as it ² done vs till vnderſtande. Oure 24 godde3 we take to witneſſe, þat whilke of 3ow ſo ryſe3 agayne3 vs, we ſall take ſwilke wreke apoñ hym þat oþer men ſall take enſample þare-by. Bot 3e als ſchrewes, and euyñ men, euer mare trowe3 ill, and thyukes ill. Wate 3e nozte wele þat 28 þe Thebienes þat riſe agayne3 vs, hadd þaire mede als þay diſſerued. And 3e haſſand in vs a wrange conſayte, blame3 vs, For we putt Scraſſageras owte of his Office the whilke 3 forſett gretly agayne3 oure maieste. We ſent vn-to 3ow bi 32 lettre for ten philoſophres, bot 3e, nozte knawande oure grete powere & oure myghte, deſpysed oure maundement and walde nozte fulfill it. Neuer þe les if all 3e haſe offendid agayne3

¹ Four half lines with miniature A.

² The reader must probably here supply 'huse' between 'as it' and 'us till underſtande', but as it occurs ſeveral times it

may be a ſyntactical peculiarity.

³ The reader must probably supply *was* or *deide* between *þe whilke* and *forſett*, but ſee previous notice.

vs whider-towarde and bene disobeyande till oure maiestee, we forgiffe 3ow all 3our gilt, and þe greunace þat 3e hafe don vs, so þat 3e be obeyande vn-till vs, fra þis tyme forwarde. Com-
 4 forthes 3ow þarefore & bee3 mery, for of vs 3e schaff hafe na greunace ne na disesse be-cause 3e did after þe conceit of Demostynes.'

¹ When þe Athenyenes herd þis *lettre* redd, þay ware rizte
 8 gladd, and þan Alexander & his Oste went fra thethynd vn-to Lacedoyne. Bot þe Lacedouns walde one na wyse obey vn-till Alexander, bot said ilkan of þan till oþer, 'latt vs nozte be lykke þe Athenyenes,' quop þay, 'þat drede þe manaschyng, and þe boste of Alexander bot late vs schewe oure myzte, and
 12 oure strenghe and manly defende *oure citee agayne3 hym.' When þay hadd saide, þay spereð þe 3ates of þe cetee faste, and went manly to þe walles. And a grete nowmer of þan
 16 tuke þan schippe3 & went to þe see, a grete nauy, to feghte wit Alexander are he come to lande. And when Alexander saw this, he sent a *lettre* to þan sayand on this wyse.

² 'Alexander þe soñ of Philippe and of þe queene Olympias vn-to þe Lacedounes we sende. We conceit 3ow, þat þat, that
 20 3our elders hase lefte 3ow, 3e kepe hale & sound & in sauete³ and lyfte3 nozte 3our hende ouer hie to þe thynges þat þe may nozte reche to. And if 3e desire for to hafe ioy of 3our strenthe,
 24 dose swa þat 3e be worthy to hafe wirchipe of vs. Þarefore we comande 3ow, þat 3e turne agayne wit 3our schippe3, and leue3 þan, & gase to lande by 3our awennd fre wilt; or sekirly I sall sett fire in than & bryne þan. And if 3ee dispice oure
 28 commandement, blame3 na mañ bot 3our selfe, if we wreke vs one 3owe.'

⁴ The Lacedounes redd þis *lettre*, and when it was redd, þay ware wonder heuy. Nozte for-thi þay redied þan to feghte.
 32 Bot Alexander arryued in an oþer coste, and come to þe citee are þay wiste and vmbylapped þe citee one ilke a syde, and assailede it strangly & dange þe Lacedouns of þe walles & slewe many of þan & wounded many, and sett fyre in þaire
 36 schippe3 & brynt þan. Þe remanant of þan þat ware lefte

Nevertheless he will forgive them if they be good for the future, since they followed Demosthenes' advice.

Alexander goes thence into Lacedemonia. But they would in no wise submit to

* Leaf 13 bk.

him. But despising him the Athenians manned the walls. Yet others of them fled over-seas, and others went to meet him in fight.

The Letter of Alexander to the Lacedemonians bidding them return and submit.

Alexander arrives by an unforeseen way and surrounds them.

He attacks the city

¹ Three lines space miniature W.

² Four half lines with miniature A.

³ MS. *sautee* with *u* written over

another letter.

⁴ Four lines space with miniature T.

fiercely till they surrender.

Alexander tells them they would not receive him peacefully. therefore are they come to this great harm. Alexander reproaches them with overgreat conceit and quotes a homely proverb.

* Leaf 14.

They thought in vain to have done to him as their forefathers did to King Xerxes. Darius hears of the coming of Alexander. He is greatly terrified and holds a council. The speech of Darius. He bewails that he has underrated him, and sees that they must now look to their safety. He fears that God's Foresight helps Alexander so that he may eventually conquer Persia.

appon lyfe, when þay saw this grete meschefe come owte of þe citee vn-till Alexander, & fette douñ at his fete, & besoughte hym of mercy & of grace. And Alexander ansuerd, 'I come to 3ow,' quop he, 'meke & mylde, bot in þat degre 3e walde nozte 4 ressayffe me, þarefore now are 3our schippe3 brynned, and 3our citee destruyed, & 3our folke3 slayne. Warned I nozte be-fore þat 3e schulde nozte heue 3our hande3 ouer-hye to þe sternes, to þe whilke nane erthely mañ may wynñ. For wha so euer 8 clymbez hier, þañ his fete may wynñ to sunñ halde, he sañ falle onane douñ to þe grounde. And þarefore es þare a com-mone prouerbe: þat "wha sa hewes to hie, þe chippes wiff fatte in his egh." 3e wende hafe done till vs as 3our eldirs 12 didde sumetyme till kynge 3erses, bot 3our wenyng dessayued 3ow. For 3e myghte nozte agayne-stande vs when we assailede 3ow.' Whan * he hadd saide on this wise, he gaffe þañ leue to gaa whare þay walde. And thañ he remouede thethyñ & went 16 to-warde Cicill. And when þe emperour Darius herd tell of þe comyng of Alexander, he was gretly abaiste and sent after all his prince3, Dukes & Erles, & oþer grete lordes, & went till a consaile. And he saide vn-to þañ, 'I see wele,' quop he, 'þat 20 he, this Alexander, þat gase thus abowte werrayand, waxe3 gretly in wirchipe, and ay-whare whare he comme3 he hase þe victory. I wende he hadd bene a theeffe & a robbour, þat hadde went till cuntre3 þat ere wayke & feble, and durst nozte agayne- 24 stande hym, & robbed þañ & spoyled þañ. Bot now, I see wele, he es a doghty mañ of Armes, & a noble werrayour. And ay þe mare þat I hafe depraued hym and despysed hym; þe mare ryse3 his name, & his wirchipe. I sent hym a balle, a toppe, 28 & a scourge, for to lere barne-laykes; bot hym þat I called a disciple, he seme3 a mayster & whare-so-euer he gase, Fortune gase wit hym. Pare-fore vs byhoue3 to trete of oure hele, & of oure pople3, and pute awaye all pride & all foly: & 32 namare despisse Alexander, saynge þat he es noghte, by cause we are emperour of Perse. For his littifnes waxes and oure gretnes decresse3. I hafe grete dowte, þat godde3 forluke helpe3 hym, so þat whils we ere abowte, & wene3 to putte hym 36 out of Ellada, we be spoyled, by hym, of þe rewme of Perse.'

¹ When Darius hadd said thir worde3, his broder Coriather

¹ Four lines.

ansuerd̄, & saït, 'þou hase here,' quop̄ he, 'gretly magnified̄ & commendid̄ Alexander, in that, þat þou sais he es mare feruent for to come in-to Perse, þaïd̄ we in-till Ellada. And þarefore
 4 if it be plesyng vn-to 3our maicstee, vse 3e þe maners of Alexander, and so sañ [3e] wele & peysably welde 3our empire & conquere many oþer rewmes. Alexander, when̄ he gase to bataile and sañ feghte, he lates [nane] of his pryuce; ne his
 8 oþer lordez gaa be-fore, &¹ hym selfe come by-hynde, bot he gase bi-fore þaïd̄ alle, and so rise; his wirchip̄ & his name.'

Quod̄ Darius, 'wheþer awe me to take sa ensample at
 12 Alexander, or Alexander at me.' A pryuce ansuerde & saide, 'Alexander,' quod̄ he, 'es a warrer² mañ & a wyse, & hase trespaste in na degree & þarefore he duse manly by hym selfe all̄ þat he doez. For he hase taken þe fourme of þe lyon̄.'
 16 'Whare-by knawes þou þat,' quop̄ Darius, * and he ansuerd̄, & saide, 'whate tyme,' quop̄ he, 'þat I was sent to Macedoyne for til aske tribute of kyng Philippe, I saw, bi his Figure & his wise ansuere, þat he schuld be a passyng mañ, bathe of witt,
 20 & of doynge. Thare-fore, if it be plesyng vn-to 3ow, I conseñ þat 3e sende till all̄ þe landez & cuntrez þat lange; to 3our empire, þat es to say to Parthy & Medy, Appollamy, Mesopotamy, Ytaly, Bactri, and till all̄ þe remenant for þay ere
 24 subietez vn-to 3ow a hundreth: c. and fifty l. of dyuerse³ folke. To þe lordes of⁴ all thire, I rede 3e sende commandyng þaïd̄, þat þay come to 3ow, in all̄ þe haste þat þay may, with all̄ þe meñ þat þay may gett whilk ere able to ga to werre⁵. And when̄
 28 þay [ere] all̄ sembled̄ to gedir late vs beseke oure goddis of helpe. And þaïd̄ Alexander when̄ he see; swilk a multitude of folke agaynes hym, his hert sañ faile hym̄, and his mens also. And owþer he sañ for fere turne hame agayne till his
 32 aweñ cuntree, or ellis submytt hym vn-to 3ow.' And þaïd̄ ansuerd̄ anoþer pryuce, & sayde, 'This es a gud conceñ,' quop̄ he, 'bot it es no;te profitable. Wate þou no;te wele þat a wolfe

Darius' brother advises him to lead his own men in the van as Alexander does.

Darius demurs.

A prince tells him of the person of Alexander, and

*Leaf 14 bk.

advises him to gather a tremendous force that Alexander's heart may fail him.

The counsel is commended but for the

¹ & is written in above the line in the MS. by the same scribe.

² Perhaps the abbreviation is here really a mere flourish, and we should read *warr*, though the contraction mark is well made.

³ In MS. *deverse* was at first written,

and *y* substituted by the same scribe.

⁴ *af* written and crossed out between *lordes* and *of*.

⁵ *were* at first written and changed to *werre* by the scribe.

cowardice
of the
Persians
and the
wisdom of
the Greeks.
Alexander
gathers his
host. He
bathes in a
cold river
and gets a
fever, to
the great
alarm of
his army.

chase; a grete floke of schepe & gerse þaṁ sparple. Righte so,
and þe wysdome of þe grekes passe; oþer nacyons.'

¹ In this mene tyme, Alexander ssembled a gret multitude of
folkez to þe nowmer of cc of feghtyng men, and remewed to
warde Perse, & come tilf a reuere þat es called Mociona, of
whilke þe water was wonder calde, & faire, & clere. And
Alexander hadd a grete lyste for to be bathede þare-in, and went
in-to it & bathed hym, & waschede hym þare-in, and also soṁ
he felle in a feuer and a heued-werke þare-wit, so þat he fure
wonder itt. And when þe Macedoyns saw þaire lorde so grefe
seke, þay were wonder heuy and reghte dredand, and said
amanges selfe: 'And Darius,' quod þay, 'wete þat oure lorde

Alexander
summons
Philip his
Physician,
* Leaf 15.

Alexander be þus seke, he saff come & falle apoṁ vs sodaynly,
& fordo vs ilkaṁ. For, and we hadd þe hele of oure lorde
Alexander, we hadd comforth ynoghe & dredde no nacyoṁ.'

Than kyng Alexander called tilf hym his Phicisiene þat
highte Philippe & badd hym ordeyne hym a Medeyne for his
sekenes. Þis ilk Phicisiene was ² * bot a 3ong maṁ, bot he was
a passyng kunnyng maṁ and a soteff in aṁ þe poyntes þat
langed to phisic. And he highte Alexander, þat [by] a certane
drynke he sulde onane make hym aṁ hale. Nowe fell it, þat
was wit Alexander a prynce, þat highte Parmenius & was
lorde of hermony. This prynce hade grete envy to þis
phicisiene, bi-cause þat Alexander luffede hym so passandly
wele & belyfe he wrate tilf Alexander, and warned hym þat
he schulde be warre wit Phillippe his phicisiene, and on na wyse
resayfe þat drynke þat he walde gyffe hym. For he said, þat
Darius had highte to giffe hym his doghter to wyffe & his
kyngdom after his dissesse if swa ware, þat he myghte be any
crafte make ane ende of hym. When Alexander hadde redd
þis lettre he was na thyng trubbled, so mekill he trustede of
þe conscience of his phisician.

But an-
other Lord
is jealous
of him
and warns
Alexander
that Phillip
would
poison
him being
in Darius'
pay.

The Physi-
cian comes
to Alex-
ander.

In þe mene tyme, þis Physician come tilf Alexander wit þe
forsaid drynke, and Alexander tuk þis drynke in a hande & þe
forsaid lettre in his oþer hande and biheld þe Physician in
þe vesage rihte scharpely. To whome þe Physician saide: 36

¹ Five lines space with miniature I.

² At bottom of leaf 14 obv. is written 'ff (fecit?) Seren. Ser.'

‘wirchipfull Emperour,’ quop he, ‘be na thyng fered bot drynke
 þe medecyne baldely,’ and þaṅ onane Alexander tuk this drynke,
 & schewed Philippe þe *lettre*. And when Philippe had redde
 4 þe *lettre*, he said tiff Alexander: ‘Now for sothe, my lorde,’
 quop he, ‘I take oure goddes to witnessse þat I ne am noȝte
 gilti of this treson, þat here es wretyn.’ Alexander þaṅ was
 aff hale als euer he was, & called vn-tiff Philyppe his phisician
 8 & embraced hym in his armes & said: ‘Philippe,’ quop he,
 ‘knaues þou how mekill luffe & triste I hafe in the. Firste
 I dranke thi medecyne, & syne I schewede þe þe *lettre* þat
 was sent me agaynes the.’ ‘Mi lorde,’ quop Philippe, ‘I be-
 12 seke ȝow þat ȝe wolle vochesaffe to send after myṅ accusour,
 and do hym come bi-fore ȝour presence þat þis *lettre* sent vn-to
 ȝow, and base lered me for to do¹ swilk a hie treson. Be-lyfe
 þaṅ gerte Alexander send after Parmeny for to come vn-tiff
 16 hym, and gerte þe sothe be serched, & fande þat he was worthy
 þe dede. And þaṅ he gert girde of his hened.

² Fra þeine kyng Alexander remowed his Oste tiff hermony þe
 mare & onane he conquered it, & put it vnder his subieccioṅ.
 20 And fra þeine he trauailed many a day *wit his Oste, and at þe
 laste come tiff a cuntre wonder drye, & full of creuesceȝ of
 cauerneȝ, & alde cisternes whare na water myghte be funden.
 And Fra þeine þay passede thurgh a cuntree, þat es called
 24 Andrias, to þe Reuere of Eufrates. And þare þay lugede þaṅ.
 Þan Alexander garte brynge many grete treȝ, for to make
 a brygge of ouer þat water, appon schippeȝ, and garte tye þaṅ
 Samedṅ wit chenys of Ireṅ & ireṅ nayleȝ. And when þe brigge
 28 was aff redy, he badde his knyghtes wende ouer apon it. Bot
 when þay saw þe grete reuer ryue so swiftly and with so
 a grete a byrre, thay dred þaṅ þat þe brygge schulde falle.
 For þay supposede þe chenys schuld breke be-cause of grete
 32 weghte. And, when Alexander saw þaṅ dredand on this
 wyse, he gert hirde-men, þat were þare kepanṅ katell, wend
 ouer before, and warnede þat þe Oste schulde folowe þaṅ.
 Bot ȝit þe knyghtis ware ferde & durste noghte wende ouer.
 36 Thaṅ was Alexander riȝte wrathe and callede vntiff hym aff
 his prynces, & grete lordeȝ, and frote he went hym selfe ouer

Alexander
 takes the
 drink given
 him, and
 shows the
 Physician
 the letter.

Alexander
 declares to
 him his
 great trust.

The trial of
 the accuser.

Alexander
 conquers
 Armenia

* Leaf 15
 bk.

the Greater
 and
 marches
 through
 deserts to
 the Eu-
 phrates.

He builds a
 bridge of
 boats and
 logs, but
 his knights
 fear to cross
 it because
 of the
 fierceness
 of the
 current.

Alexander
 sends
 herdsmen
 over, yet
 the knights
 durst not
 follow.
 Alexander
 then goes

¹ MS. repeats *for to do* twice.

² Three lines with miniature F.

first over the bridge with his princes. Then the army follows. Alexander destroys the bridge behind him. The knights murmur thereat, fearing disaster.

Alexander's speech to his men.

Let them all perish or conquer, for they shall never see home again till they have overthrown all their enemies.

Darius gathers a great force

* Leaf 16. to meet Alexander upon the river Tigris. But his men flee.

The brave Persian who dares alone try to take Alexander's life in disguise for the sake of the

þe bryges, & all his pryncez folowed hym, and sytheñ all þe Oste. Twa grete ryuers rynnes thurgh Medee, Mesopotamy and Babiloyne, þat es to say Tygre & Eufrates, and soo rynnez in-to þe reuere¹ of Nilus. When Alexander & all hys Oste 4 ware past ouer Eufrates, he gert smyte sonder þe brygge þat he hadd' gert make bifore, and dissolue ilk a pece þare-off fra oper. And when his knyghtis sawe that, þay ware reghte heuy and murnede gretly þarefore, and said' emanges þam selfe, 'What 8 sañ we now doo,' quop þay, 'when we are harde by-stadde wit oure enemys & walde flee. For ouer þis reuere may we nozte wynñ.' And when Alexander perceyued' þat murmoure of his folke, he said vn-to þamñ. 'What es þat,' quop he, 'þat 3e say 12 amangez 3ow, "If it falle þat we flee owte of þe bataile." Sothely, I late 3ow wele wite, þat þis is þe cause whi I garte for-do þis brygg, þat I gert make; For-thi, þat owper we schulde feghte manly or eñs if [we] walde flee, we schulde all perische at 16 anes and all drynke of a coppe. For-whi þe victorye es nozte aretted' to þamñ þat fliez, Bot to þamñ þat habydez, or folowes on þe chace. Þare-fore comforthez 3ow wele, & bese balde of hertis, and thynke it bot a playe stalworthly to feghte. For I say 20 3ow sekerly; we ne schaff neuer see Macedoyne, be-fore we hafe ouercomend' all oure enemys, And þamñ wit þe victorie we sañ tourne hame agayne.'

²In þis mene tyme, kyng Darius gadirde a grete multitude 24 of meñ agaynes Alexander, and ordeyned' ouer þamñ fyve-hundreth * chyftaynes of grete lordes and lused hym wit his meñ apoñ þe reuere of Tygre. And one a day thir twa kynges wit þaire bather Ostes mett to-gedir apoñ a faire felde 28 and faughte to-gedir wonder egerly. Bot sone Darius meñ hadd' þe werre & 3ode to grounde thikkfalde, slayne in þe felde. And when þe remenaute saw þat, þay tuk þamñ to þe flighte. In Darius oste was a mañ of Perse, a doghety, & a balde; 32 to whaym Darius highte for to giffe his doghete to wyfe, if so were, þat he myghte, by any way, sla kyng Alexander. This mañ gatt hym clethyng and Armour like vn-to þe macedoyns, and went amangez þamñ, as þay faghte, ay till he come by-hynd 36 kyng Alexander. And alsoñ als he come nere hym, he lifte his

¹ Scribe first wrote *revere* here, and then wrote a *y* (*ryvere*) over it. The process is

quite plain.

² Two lines with small miniature I.

- swerde on heghte, & lete flye at hym wīt aft þe myghte þat he
hade, and hitt hym on þe heued so fercely, þat he perched¹ his
bacenett, and drewe þe blode of hym. Wheñ Alexander knyghtis
4 saw that: þay tuke hym anone, & broghte hym bifore Alexander,
and Alexander, supposyng þat he hadde bene a macedoyne, saide
vn-till hym. 'Wirchipfull man,' quop he, ' & doghety & strange
what ayled þe at me, for to giffe suylke a strake, knewe þou
8 noȝte wele þat it was I, Alexander ȝour helpere & ȝour allere
seruande.' And [the] Percyene ansuerd, & said, ' Wiete þou
wele wirchipfull emperour,' quop he, ' I ne ame na macedoyne,
bot I am a mañ of Perse; and this dede I didd. For kyng
12 Darius made me a promysse of his doghetir to wife, if I myghte
brynge hym thi heid.' Than kyng Alexander called bi-for hym
all his knyghtis and askede þaṁ what þaṁ thoghte was for to
do wīt this mañ. Sum ansuerde & saide þaṁ thoghte it beste
16 to gerre smyte of his heid, Sum for to putt hym to þe fire for to
brynne, Sum to gare drawe & hang hym. And when Alexander
had herde þaire conceit, he ansuerd & said: 'Sirs,' quop he,
' what wrange or what defawte cañ ȝe fynde in þis mañ, Señ he
20 hase besied hym tiñ obey tiñ his lordes commandement, and at
his power fulfilled it. Whilke of ȝow, so demeȝ hym worthy to
be dedde, es worthy in tyme comyng to hafe þe same dome.
For if I commande ane of ȝow for to ga & sla Darius, þe same
24 payne, that ȝe deme þis mañ for to suffre, ware ȝe worthy for to
suffre ȝourselſe of Darius, if ȝe myȝte be getyñ.' ² And * þan he
commanded þat he schulde wende hame to his felawes wīt-owtten
any harme. When Darius herde þat his lordes ware slayne in
28 grete nowmer, he gadered a grete multitude of knyghtis and of
fotemen, and went vp on a hill þat es called Taurisius, and thare
he made his mustre of his men, supposyng þat he schuld ouer-
come Alexander thurgh multitude of folke. Bot alsoñ als þay
32 mett wīt þaire bathere osteȝ, and bigañ for to fighte, Darius
meñ fledd and hymselfe also. And Alexander persuede hym
vn-to þe citee of Bactriañ, and þare he lugged hym, and offerde
Sacrafice tiñ his goddeȝ. And on þe morne he garte assaile þe

King's
daughter.

Alexander
asks him
why he did
this. He
answers.

Alexander
asks coun-
sel of his
knights,
what shall
he do with
this man?
Alexander
speaks to
them, and
shows this
man forth
to them as
an ex-
ample.
And then
he utters
his will.

* Leaf 16
bk.

Darius
gathers his
men again
to the fight,
but yet
again is he
overcome.

Alexander
pursues
him.
He con-
quers Bac-

¹ The scribe wrote first 'perced,' altered afterwards, in a very rough way, to 'perched.'

² M.S. reads 'and he commanded' at

bottom of first side of leaf 16 and 'þan he commanded' on the top of second side of the same leaf.

trian,
taking
great trea-
sure to-
gether with
Darius'
mother and
wife.

citee, and wanne it on werre. And in þe cheffe place þare-of he sett his trone. And all þir oper citez þat were abowte it, he wannið þam̄ o werre, & putt þam̄ vnder his subieccion̄. In þis ilke citee of Bactriā, he fandē tresour wit-owtten̄ nowmer, and 4 also his moder, and his wyfe.

A Persian
prince
offers to
betray
Darius to
Alexander
if he will
grant him
ten thou-
sand
knights.
Alex-
ander's
answer.

¹ And in þe mene tyme, whils *Alexander* lay at Batran: þare come a prynce of *Darius* oste vn-till *Alexander*, & said vn-till hynd, 'Wirchipfull emperour,' quop he, 'I hafe a lang tyme bene a knyght of *Darius*, and done hym grete seruyce; and zitt to this day I had neuer na reward' of hym. And þare-fore if it like vn-to zowre maieste; take me ten̄ thowsande of zour meñ of armes; and I hete zow, for to bryngē to zour hande kyng 12 *Darius*, & þe maste parte of his oste.' And when̄ *Alexander* had herde þis, he said vn-till hym. 'Frende,' quop he, 'I thanke þe mekill of thi faire promys. Neuer þe lesse, I late þe wite my meñ will nozte beleue þat þou wilt feghte agaynes thynd owenid̄ 16 peple.' In þe mene tyme a Prynce of *Darius* oste sent vn-till hym a letter, of whilk þis was þe tenour.

Letter of
one of
Darius'
princes to
Darius be-
seeching
help.

* Leaf 17.

² 'To *Darius*, grete kyng of kynges, his lordes whilke he³ hase ordeyned cheftaynes vnder hym Sende; meke seruyce. Oftymes 20 be-fore this hafe we wreten̄ to zour maieste, and now agayne we writte vn-to zow, & late; zow wite þat þe macedoynes & kyng *Alexander*, as wode lyouus ere enterde* oure landez, and all oure strenthes, as a wilde raueschande beste he hase destroyed: 24 & oure knyghtes slayne. And oppressed we are wit so grete tribulacionns, þat we [may] na lengare suffre his mawgree, ne his malece bere. Where-fore, mekly we be-seke zour benyngne maiestee, þat ze wilt drawe to zoure mynde oure meke seruyce, 28 and swilke socoure vouchsaffe to send' vs, þat we put off and agaynestande þe violence & þe malice of oure fore-said enemys.' When̄ *Darius* had redde þis lettre, on ane he gert writte a lettir to kyng *Alexander*, sayand on þis wyse. 32

Darius to
Alexander,
reproach-
ing his vain
ambitions,
thanking

⁴ 'Daryus kyng of Perse and kyng of kynges, vn-to my seruande *Alexander*, I say. Now late þare es commēd till oure eres tythynges: þat þou wenez to euen̄ thi littilhede till oure heghe magnificence. Bot Seid̄ it es impossible till a heuy asse, wit 36

¹ Three lines with miniature A and knight's head within.

² Three lines space with miniature T.

³ MS. repeats 'he' twice.

⁴ Three lines space with miniature D and a man's head within, much faded.

owtten wenges, or oper instrumentez of flying, for to be lifte vp to þe sternes, late nozte thynd hert be raysede to lye in pride for þe victories þat þou hase geteñ. We hafe wele herd tell þat
 4 þou hase done gentilly, and schewed grete humanytee till oure moder, oure wyfe, & oure childre. and þarefore I late þe wele wite þat, als lang als þou dose wele to þaund, þou salt fynde me nane enemy to the. And if þou do itt to þaund þou salt hafe þe
 8 enemytee of me, and þarefore spare þaund noghte, bot do to þaund as þe liste. For somtyme þou salt see & fele þe sentence of oure ire lighte apouñ thi heghe pride.' Whend Alexander hadd redde þis *lettre* he wrate hym Anoper agayne whare-off þe tenour
 12 was this.

¹ Alexander þe soñ of Philippe & qwene Olympias to Darius kyng of Perse we write. Pride & vayne glorie hase oure goddez all way hated; and takez vengeance of dedly men þat takes
 16 apouñ þaund þe name of immortalitee. Bot þou, als I wele see, cesseez nozte zitt hider-to for to blasfeme in all þat þou may. Bot of that þat þou blamez me for þe benygnytes that I schewed þi moder, þi wyfe, & þi childre; þou ert moued on a lewed
 20 fantasye. For I late þe wele wyte, I did it nozte * for to be thanked of the, ne for to hafe thi Beneuolence þarefore. Bot it come of a gentilnes of oure awennd hert, fownded in vertu. Of thee victories also whilke þe forluke of godd' hase sent vs, ere
 24 we na-thing enpriddede. For we knawe wele þat oure goddis alway helpes vs, whilke þou ilk a daye dispysez & settez at nozte. And this salt be þe laste letter þat I salt writte vu-to þe. Beware if þou wilt, For I say the sekerly, I come to þe
 28 onane.' Þis *lettre* gaffe Alexander to þe messangers of Darius and many grete giftez þare wit. Seyme,² he sent anoper *lettre*, till his pryncez & his lordez, of þis tenour.

³ Alexander, þe soñ of Philippe & of þe quene Olympias vn-
 32 to þe pryncez & þe lordez vnder our subieccioñ in Capadoce, In laodice, or ells whare duelland, gretyng, & gude grace. We charge zou & commande3 zow straytly þat ilkañ of zow ordayne vs in all þe haste þat ze may j^m nete-hydes barked, &
 36 send þaund till Alexander, þat we and oure knyghtis may gere

him for his kindness to his wife and children, and enjoining him to continue his courtesy to them.

Alexander to Darius, reproaching him with assuming to himself the character of deity, spurning

* Leaf 17 bk.

his proffered thanks, and leaving the decision of the matter to the gods.

Alexander writes to his Lords, ordering commissariat materials.

¹ Three lines space, miniature A, with king's head (much faded).

² MS. clearly reads *seyme*, it may be for 'seyine' (=seine).

³ Four lines space, red capital A, much smudged; a small *a* written beside it in the margin.

make vs of þam clethyng, & schooes; And wit cameles þat 3e haue at Alexsander gerre cary þam to þe water of Eufrates.' In þis mene tyme a prynce of Darius, Nostande by name, wrate to Darius on þis wise. 4

One of his barons writes to Darius, telling of his own defeat and the treachery of others.

¹ 'To Darius þe wirchipfull grete godd' his seruande Nostand' law seruyce. Me aughte nozte to sende swylk tythyng to 3our ryalle maiestee, bot grete nede gers me do it. Þare-fore be it knowen vn-to 3our hie lordchipe, þat twa grete pryncez of 3ours, & I, hase foghte w'it kyng Alexander, And hyn'es fallen þe victorie, & slayne he hase thir twa worthy pryncez, & mekiß oþer folke, and I fleed greuously wonded. And many worthi knyghtis of 3ours hase for-saken 3our lordchipe & ioyned þam till Alexander oste, þe whilk he hase wirchipfully, and base giffen grete lordchipes of 3ours.' And when Darius had redd' þis lettre, he sent in haste till Nostand, and commanded hym for till ordeyne a grete Oste; and manfully agaynestande þe folke of Macedoyne. He sent also a lettre to Porus kyng of Ynde, prayng hym to helpe hym agaynes Alexander, and Porus wrate agayne in þis manere. 16

Darius writes to him, ordering him to gather a great force, and to Porus, King of India, asking help. Porus replies that he is at that time grievously sick, but that he will come as soon as possible with ten legions of knights.

² 'Porus, kyng of Ynde, vn-to Darius, kyng of Perse, gretyng. For þou hase prayed vs to come to the in helpynge *of^s the agaynes thyn enemys, we late the wete, þat we are redy & alwaye hase bene, for to com' to helpe 3ow. Bot as at þis tyme we are lettete to com' to 3ow, be-cause of grete seknesse þat we ere stadd' in, Neuer þe lesse, sekerly, it es rihte heuy vn-till vs, & greuous, vn-till [vs to] here of þe grete injury þat es done vn-till 3ow. And þarefore we late 3ow wite, þat w'it-in schorte tym, we sall come for to helpe 3ow w'it teið legyouns of knyghtis.' Bot when Rodogorius, Darius moder, herd' tesse þat Darius hir soñ ordayned' hym for to feghte agayne w'it kyng Alexander scho was rihte sory and wrote a lettre vn-till hym þat contened' this sentence. 28

Darius' mother writes to him, coun-

'To⁴ kyng Darius, hir moste biloued' son, Rodogorius, his modir sende 3 gretyng & ioy. I hafe vnderstandeð þat 3e hafe assemblede 3our men, & mekiß oþer folke also, for to feghte 32

¹ Four lines with red capital T, much smudged; a small t written beside it in margin.

² Two lines with smudged capital P; a small p written in margin.

³ On leaf 17 of þe, on leaf 18 of the.

⁴ Rodorius scratched out. Four lines with large capital T in red; small t in margin beside.

- eftsones wit Alexander. Bot I late þe wite it wiff availle þe
 nathynge. For þoghe 3e hadd' gadirde to gedir alle þe meñ in
 þe werlde duellyng, 3it 3e ware vuable to agayne-stande hym.
 4 For þe foreluke of godd' mayntenez hym, & vphalde3 hym. And
 þarefore dere soñ, it es my counsell, 3our heghenesse of herte
 3e lese, & fall sunwhate fra 3our glory, and bese fauorable to þe
 gretnes of Alexander. For better it es to forga þat at 3e may
 8 no3te halde, and haffe in pesse þan þat at 3e may halde, þan for
 too couett all and be excluded & for-ga all.' When Darius
 redde þis lître, he was gretly troubbled and weped bitterly,
 command' vn-till his mynde, his moder, his wyf, & his childer.
- 12 ¹In the mene tyme kyng Alexander remowed his oste, and
 drew nere þe cite of Susis, in þe whilke Darius was lengand
 the same tyme, so þat he my3te see all þe heghe hille3 þat ware
 abownd þe citee. þan Alexander commanded all his meñ, þat
 16 ilkañ of þañ suld cutte downde a brawnche of a tree, and bere
 þañ furth wit þañ & dryfe bi-fore þañ alle manere of beste3 þat
 þay my3te fynde in þe way. And when the Percyenes saw þañ
 fra þe heghe hille3 þay wondred þam gretly. And Alexander come
 20 wit his oste to þe citee of Susis and lused hym nere besyde þe
 citee. And thañ he called his prynce3 & his oþer lordez and
 said vn-to þañ, 'Late vs,' quop he, 'send a messangere to kyng
 Darius & bidd' hym ²owþer & conð feghte wit vs or ellis *submyt
 24 hym vn-till vs.' The nexte nyghte after, Godd' Amon apperede
 vn-till Alexander in his slepe bryngand hym þe figurre of Mercuri
 & a mantill, and anoþer manere of garment of Macedoyne, and
 saide vn-till hym. 'Alexander, soñ,' quop hee, 'euer mare when
 28 þou hase nede, sañ I helpe the. And þarefore luke þou sende
 noghte to Darius þat messangere þat þou spake off. For I wiff
 þat þou thi selfe clethe thee wit my figure & wende thedir þi
 selfe; if alle it be perilous for to do, Dred þe na thyng, for
 32 I sañ be thi helpe, so þat þou sañ hafe na maner of disesse.
- On þe morne when Alexander rase fra slepe, he was gretly
 comforthed of his dreme & called till hym his prynce3 and
 talde þañ alle his dreme, and þay assentede alle, þat he schulde
 36 wende to Darius in his propir per:son. And onane he called vn-
 till hym aue of þe prince3, þe whilke bighte Emulus. This

selling him
 to lower
 himself
 somewhat
 and yield
 to Alex-
 ander's
 greatness
 rather
 than
 lose all.

Alexander
 comes to
 Susa, driv-
 ing before
 him a
 crowd of
 beasts. He
 decides to
 send a mes-
 senger to
 Darius.

* Leaf 18
 bk.

The Vision
 of God
 Amon in
 the night,
 who tells
 Alexander
 to go
 alone to
 Darius in
 his figure.

¹ Four lines with large red capital I;
 small i written in margin.

² hym inserted afterwards in left-hand
 margin.

Alexander rides with a single knight to the River Granicus which was frozen over. prynce was a wyghte mañ, & an hardy & wonder trewe tiff Alexander. And það Alexander had hym lepe one a horse, and brynge wit hym a noþer horse & folow hym. And he didd so. And whend þay come to gedir to þe water of Graunte, þat in þe 4 langage of Perse es called Struma, þay fande it frosen ouer, and Alexander onane chaunged he¹ wede, & lefte þe foresaid prynce wit twa horse at þe water-syde and hym selfe, wit þe horse þat he satt apoñ, went ouer þe water apoñ þe Ys, towarde þe citee of 8 Susis. And his prynce besoghte hym þat he walde suffre hym wende wit hym, ne perauenture any disesse fette hym by þe waye. And Alexander ansuerd & sayde, 'Habyde me here,' quop he, 'For he satt be my helpere, whañ in dremez I sawe appere 12 vn-to me.' This ilke water I spake of bi-fore, all þe wynter seson ilke a nyghte was frosen all ouer; bot tymely in þe mornynge als sone als þe warme soñ smate apoñ it, það it dissoluede agayne, & rañ wonder swiftly; þe brede of þat water es þe space of a 16 furlange. When Alexander come to þe zate of þe citee the Perciens, when þay saw hym, hadd grete wonder of his figure, and wend he hadd bene a godd; and onane þay asked hym what he was? And he ansuerd, and said he was a messangere sent 20 fra kyng Alexander to paire lorde Darius, and be-lyfe þay broghte hym til hym. Darius, when Alexander come bi fore hym, said vn-til hym. 'Whethyñ ert þou,' quop he? 'I ame,' quop Alexander, 'sent vn-to þe fra kyng Alexander to wiete where 24 to þou taries to come tiff hym to gyffe hym batelle. Owthir come & feghte manfully wit thyne enemys or ellis submitte þe tiff hym & * pay² hym tribute.'

* Leaf 19.

And Darius heard him and said, 'Art thou then the Alexander 28 who with such madness shaped thy speech, for I see thou holdest thyself not from words as a messenger doth, but art bold as a king. Yet know that by thy words I am not frightened at all. Come dine with me this day.' And with 32 these words, he reached out his hand to him and took him by his right, and led him into the palace. And Alexander, musing, began to say: 'A right good token hath this barbarian wrought me when he clasped my right hand and drew me into 36

¹ MS. reads 'he'. We ought perhaps to substitute 'his'.

² Pay him tribute is written at the

bottom of leaf 18; between that leaf and what is now leaf 19 a whole leaf is missing.

the palace, because, as the gods say sooth, ere long the palace shall be mine.' And going in, Darius and Alexander lay by a table, and the daintiest feast was laid out. And Darius' 4 marshall gazed hard at Alexander face to face. And the table was wreathed in cleanest gold. But the Persians, seeing Alexander's shape, yet knew nothing of what wisdom, doughtiness, and strength lurked in this small body. The dishes and tables 8 and seats were wrought of the finest gold. The cup-bearers bore cups in golden vessels and rarest jewels. And when a cup was handed to Alexander, he hid it in his breast. And another cup was brought to him and he did the same, and thus too with 12 a third. And those who bore the cups, seeing this, gave the news to the Emperor Darius. And he, hearing of it, rose up, saying: 'Friend, what is this that thou doest, hiding the cups in thy breast?' And Alexander: 'In our king's feasts the 16 guests are wont, whenever they will, to take their drinking-vessels. But, as this seemeth to you unworthy, I will give them back forthwith.' And with these words he gave them back to the cup-bearers. But the Persians who sate at the 20 feast said each to each, 'a good custom, indeed, and one to be praised.' And some lords, too, praised this way and exalted it. But one of the Princes of Darius, called Anapolus, sitting at the feast, gazed hard at Alexander and his face. For he had seen 24 him when, at Darins' bidding, he went into Macedonia to take tribute of Philip. He, knowing his voice and looking on his face, began to think to himself and say: 'Is this not Alexander?' And rising at once he drew near to Darius, saying: 28 'This messenger whom thou beholdest is Alexander, the son of Philip of Macedon.' And Alexander, seeing them with each other in talk, knew they were speaking of him and he was known. And at this he rose up from his place and leapt away 32 from the board. And taking a blazing torch from a Persian's hand, himself mounted his palfrey, which he found ready outside Darius's palace, and fled in the swiftest flight. And the Persians seeing this, taking weapons, mounted their steeds with 36 a mighty stir, and quickly followed after Alexander. And in the darkness of the nightfall, they began to stray, some scratched their faces by the tree-boughs, some falling into ditches. But Alexander, bearing his blazing torch in hand, fared straight

The Feast of Darius and its magnificence.

Alexander hides the golden cups in his breast. Darius chides him. Alexander answers by giving them to the cup-bearers.

Alexander is recognized by one who had been in Macedon. He tells Darius.

Alexander flees away and is pursued by the Persians. He escapes in the darkness.

Darius on his throne sees the golden image of Xerxes break, which fore-tokens the end of the Persian Empire. Alexander swims the river, but his horse is lost.

forward. Now, Darius sate on his throne and thought of Alexander and how great his daring was. He saw a statue of gold of Xerxes the Persian king, who sate below the high-seat in the hall. And at once the statue broke and was all scattered 4
asunder. And Darius seeing this was smitten with heaviness of heart and began to weep sorely and long. And he said: 'This foretokeneth the wasting of my life, and the utter down-fall of the Persian kingdom.' Alexander, however, coming to 8
the river Grancus, found it swollen, and leapt athwart it. But ere he was over the stream burst its banks, and swept his horse away; with great hardship Alexander escaped and met Eumulus, his lord. And thus he went back to his army and 12
told them of Darius, how he had dealt with him, and the torch with which he had fled away.

HOW ALEXANDER PUT HEART INTO HIS HOST ANEW.

Alexander gathers his army.

And on the following day, he gathered his army, which told two hundred and twenty thousand of weaponed men. And 16
he went up

* * * * *

* Leaf 19. Alexander's harangue to his men, telling them to have trust in their own bravery.

*on a hye place & comforthed his meñ and said vn-to þaṇd: 'þe multitude of þe percienes,' quoth he, 'may nozte be euend to þe multitude of þe greckes. For sewrly we are ma þan þay. And 20
if þay were ane hundreth sythes maa theñ wee, late nozte þour hertis faile þow þarefore. For I telle þow a grete multitude of flyes may do na harme till a fewee waspes.' And when þe Oste had herde thire wordes þay commendide hym halelely wit a 24
voyce.

Darius crosses the river Grancus with a mighty army and meets Alexander in battle.

¹ Thaṇ þe emperour Darius remowed his oste, and come to þe reuere of Graunt on þe nyghte, and went ouer on þe ys, and þar he lused hym. The Oste of Darius was wonder grete and 28
strange. For þay hadd in þaire oste X^m cartes ordaynd For þe werre, and grete multitude of Olyfantez, wit towres of tree oñ þaṇd, stuffed wit feghtyng meñ. And sone after appoñ a day thir twa kynges wit þaire ostez mett samen 32
on a faire felde, Darius wit his meñ, and Alexander wit his men.

¹ Four lines with large cursive ornamental T of new type and decorative style.

Than Alexander lepte apouð his horse, þat highte Buctiphalas, and rade furthe bi-fore all his oste, and houed in þe myddes waye bi-twene þe twa ostes. And when þe Percyenes saw hym, 4 þay had grete wonder of hym, and ware riȝte ferde for hym, by cause he was so vggly. Neuere-þe-lesse þay tromped vp & went to-warde Alexander. And sone þe batefl ioyned, & faghte to-gedir fersely, and many meñ dyed on ayther party; þare was so 8 thikke schott of arowes, þat þe ayer was couerde, as it had bene wit a clowde. Some faghte wit swerdeȝ, sum wit speres, sum wit axes, & sunð wit arowes. Þe felde lay full of folke, sunð dede, sunð halfe-dede, & sunð greuously wounded. Thay begað 12 for to feghte at þe soñ-rysyng, and faghte to þe soñ-settingg. Bot þare dyed many ma of þe Percyenes þan þare dide of Macedoyns.

Alexander mounts Bucephalus and rides between the two armies. The Persians are afraid of his ugliness. The battle begins and lasts the day. The Persians lose more than the Greeks.

And when Darius sawe his meñ fatte so thikke in þe felde, he 16 lefte þe felde, and fledd, and þe Percyenes seyng that, þay fledd also. Bot þañ þaire cartes of werre rane amange þe Percyens & slewe of þañ folke wit-owte nowmer & namely of fote-meñ. For by þat tyme it was myrke nyghte, and þay ne myȝte noȝte see 20 for tiſt eschewe þañ. When Darius come* to the foresaid watere he fande it froseñ, and ouer he went. And when he was ouer, þe oper lordes of perse went apouð þe ysȝ, so grete a multitude þat þay couerde þe ysȝ fra þe taa banke to þe toþer, 24 & þat a grete brede, & þañ onane þe ysȝ brake als sone als Darius was paste ouer, & all þat ware on þe ysȝ ware perischte, ilk a moder soñ, & drowned in þe water. Þe remanaunt, when þay come to the water, þay myȝte noȝte wyñ ouer. And þañ þe 28 Macedoynes come, & dange þañ downe. In this batefle þare was slaen of þe Percyenes ccc^m wit-owteñ thase þat were drowned.

Darius flees and his flight causes the confusion of his army.

*Leaf 19 bk. He crosses the ice, but his Lords are drowned in its breaking.

Kyng Darius fledd to þe citee of Susis, & went in tiſt his 32 palace, & felle downe to þe grounde, & sigheand & wepande wit a sare hert, he said theis wordes: 'Allas, full wa es me, vnhappye wriche, þat euer I was borne, for þe ire & þe indignaciõ of heuend es fallen one mee. For I Darius þat lifte 36 my selueñ vp to þe sternes, Now am I broghte lawe to þe erthe. Now es Darius, þat conquerede all þe Este nacyns, & made þañ subiecte & tributaries vn-tiſt hym, fayne for to flee fra his enemys and submytte hym vn-to þañ. And it ware

Darius flees to the city of Susa. He bewails his lot, for he is fallen from his greatness. He moralizes on the present and future lives, and quotes sacred passages.

knawed vn-to þe wreched mañ, what schulde falle till hym after-wardez, he schulde hafe littill thoghte of þe tyme presentt, bot one þe tyme to come solde his thozte be. In a poynte of a daye it falles, þat þe meke es raysede vp to þe clowdlez, and þe 4 prowde es putt to nozte.' And whēñ he hade saide thir wordes, he rase vp, & satt & wrate a *lettre* vn-till Alexander, sayande on this wyese.

He writes to Alexander.

He praises the great wisdom of Alexander, who even knows what is to come.

Nevertheless he reminds him of his earthly birth, and warns him against pride. For often the end of a man ill accords with the beginning. He reminds him of the fate of Xerxes.

Darius demands his mother, wife, and children, offering therefor his treasure and the kingship over the Medes and Persians.

¹ 'Till his lorde Alexander, kyng of Macedoyne, Darius, kyng 8 of Perse, gretynge & Joy. We hafe wele vndirstanden by þat that we hafe herde of zowe and sene, þat ze hafe in zow grete wysedomd & a hye witt: so þat nozte allanly ze knawe thynges þat are present or passede, bot also thynges þat ere 12 for to come, and þare-fore all thynges, þat ze doo: ze do it wit-owteñ any lakke or repreue. Neuer-þe-lesse hafez in mynde þat rihte as wee ware, so ware ze geteñ & borne of a fleschly womañ. And þare fore rayse nozte zour herte to hye 16 bi-cause of zour prowesche & zour doghty dedis, so þat ze forgete zour laste ende. For ofte tymes we see þat þe lattere end of a mañ discordes wit þe firste. It sufficez till a wer-ryoure for to gete þe victorye of his enemys, þose all he 20 schewe nozte alle þe malice þat he may. Remembre zow of þe wirchipfull kyng zerses oure progenytour, þat many victoryes gatt & schane in alle prosperiteez, Be-fore he raysed his hert in pride passande mesure. Alle þe wirchippe þat he hadd 24 wonñ be-fore, he loste in Ellada, þare-fore remembre zow, þat all þe wirchipes & þe victoryes þat ze hafe geteñ by þe forluke of ² godd'

* * * * *

ye got this victory. To us then who beseech grant your 28 mercy. Yield us our mother, our sons, and wife, and we will render unto you the treasures we have in Aydem and Susa and Batram, the which our fathers hoarded and hid in earthen cellars. And we will give you the kingship of the Medes and 32 Persians, that thus ye may have and keep what victory Jove the all-mighty hath granted you.'

¹ Four lines space with decorated miniature T.

² 'by þe forluke of godd' is written at the bottom of leaf 18 bk. Between this leaf and what is now numbered leaf 20

a whole leaf is missing; and we are plunged into the middle of quite a different letter of Darius on leaf 20, which is addressed to Porus.

HOW THE MESSENGERS OF DARIUS GAVE ALEXANDER THE LETTER, AND HIS ANSWER.

The messengers of Darius coming then to Alexander gave him the letter, which Alexander read soon before them all. Then one of his chieftains, called Parmerion, said to Alexander :
 4 'Most mighty emperor, take all the wealth which Darius covenants unto thee, and give back to him his wife and sons.' And, hearing this, Alexander called to him the messengers of Darius, and before all spoke thus, saying: 'Tell ye to your
 8 emperor we wonder first that he misdeemed his mother, wife, and sons to be betrayed by our hands. If he be overcome, bid him not promise us a reward. If he bow himself to our yoke, all his honours and the majesty of God shall be laid
 12 bare to our sway. If he be not overcome, let him do us battle once again.' This said, he gave them rich gifts and sent them forth away. Then he bade the soldiers take up and gather the bodies of the dead and bury them in graves:
 16 and he bade them heal those that were wounded.

A noble of Alexander counsels him to accept these terms. But he will not. But bids Darius either submit himself or do battle.

He orders the dead to be buried.

HOW ALEXANDER ENCAMPED BY THE STREAM GRANCUS.

Then he encamped with his host by the stream of Graneus, and wintered there some days. And there he offered up victims to the gods. And about the river there were palaces,
 20 and they were the fairest, raised up with greatest skill, and Xerxes the King of the Persians had built them. Alexander, seeing them, bade them be burned. And soon after this, stirred by ruth, he gave word none should dare touch them.
 24 And there too was a most fair and very wide field in which the Kings and Deemsters of Persia were of old buried. And digging into this field the Macedonians found in the graves gemmed vases. And there they found the grave of Ninus the
 28 King of Assyria and Persia, which was hollowed out of a single amethyst, and engraven on the outside with palm-leaves and sundry kinds of birds. And so bright was the amethyst that even from the outside the man's body appeared whole.
 32 And in this place was a narrow and evil tower on which stood many men, some with cut legs, some with broken thighs, some with torn hands, and some blinded. They hearing

He encamps with his army by the Graneus and sacrifices. Alexander commands the palaces to be burnt.

The burying-place of the Kings and Judges of Persia, wherein treasure is found. The grave of Ninus and its wonders. The Tower of the Maimed Men.

They be-
seech
mercy of
Alexander,
who re-
stores them
to their
own.
For they
were nobles
dispossess-
ed by
Darius.

the noise of the armed men cried out to Alexander, who hearing their cries, bade them be taken thence. And seeing them was struck with ruth and wept, and bade each one be given ten thousand drachmas, and be restored every one to 4 his own. For Darius kept them in prison, since they were of noble birth, and awarded all their possessions to his thralls. In the meantime the messengers from Alexander to Darius told all that Alexander had said. And Darius hearing this 8 began to get ready for the fight. And he wrote another letter to Porus King of India, which runneth as follows:—

Darius'
letter to
Porus,
King of
India.

THE LETTER SENT BY DARIUS TO PORUS KING OF
INDIA.

He asks
him again
for help
against
Alexander,
since he
has re-
solved to
fight to the
very death.
For it is
better to
die in the
field than to
see the end
of his king-
dom and
people.

'Darius King of the Persians to Porus King of Our Indians joy. We asked but lately of you, and again we ask you to 12 come and help against those who strive to overthrow our palace. We know well also that the like harm will light on you. For this Alexander, who fighteth thus, hath an un- quenchable and wild soul, which like a lion ceaseth not, and 16 is like the sea when stirred by mighty winds. Furthermore, unwillingly though it be, we have gathered numberless races, and we have taken our counsel to fight with him to the very death.

20

* Leaf 20.

Darius
writes to
Porus to
succour
him for the
sake of
himself, his
dynasty,
and his
people,
promising
him help
and the
spoils of
Alexander.
He warns
him that as
Alexander
had done
to him, so
would be
done to
Porus.

* better vs es for to dy manly in þe felde þan for to see þe mescheffe of oure pople & þe dissolaciō of oure rewme. Where-fore, hafand' reward' and compassiō of oure disesse, we be-seke 3ow, þat 3e late oure prayeres sattel' in 3our hert, 24 & helpe for to succour vs now at oure nede, hafand' in 3oure mynde þe grete noblaye of oure progenytours. And I seure 3ow þat [I sall] giffe ilke a fote-maṅ þat come3 wīt 3ow, thre pece3 of golde, And ilke a horse-maṅ, fyve pece3 of golde, 28 And also mete & drynke ynoghe to 3ow & all 3our meṅ. And whare so 3e lugge 3ow, we schaffe fynde 3ow a hundreth & fourscore tentes curyously wroghte. And also we schaff giffe 3ow Alexander horse Buktyphalas, and alle appairait', 32 & þe araye þat langes tiff Alexander hallely schaff be 3ours and also all þe spoylle of his folke sall be dalte amange3 3oure folke. Where-fore we beseke 3ow þat also soṅ als this

lettre commez to 3ow, 3e haste 3ow till vs in all þat 3e may. For wite 3e wele for certayne, that ri3te als he done till vs, so he purpose hym in tyme commynge for to do to 3owe.'

4 ¹In the men tyme, certane meī of Darius went fra hym & come till Alexander, & talde hym, þat Darius purposede hym for to feghte wit hym estesones, and had sent till Porus, kyng of Inde, for to come in grete haste, for to helpe hym.

8 Wheñ Alexander herd þis, be-lyfe he removed his Oste to ward Darius, thynkand in his herte þat he wolde on na wyse take apouñ hym þe name of Emperour be-fore he hadd wouñ Darius and his rewme one werre. And when Darius herde

12 of þe commyng of Alexander, he dredd hym gretly & þe Percyenes also. Bot þare was two prynee3 of Darius, of þe whilke þe tane highte Bisso & þe toper Ariobarsantes, thir twa wheñ pair² herd of þe comyng of Alexander, conspyred

16 to-gedir for to slaa þaire lord Darius, supposyng for till hafe a grete thanke of Alexander, and a gret reward for þaire dede. And ayther of þauñ ware sworne till oper. And thañ thay went to þe kynges palace, and come intill his chamber wit

20 draweñ swerdes in þaire handez, and fand Darius bi hym ane. And wheñ Darius saw that, he trowed wele þat þay wolde sla hym, And said vn-to þauñ: 'Dere frende3, hedir to wardez hafe I called 3ow my seruande3, bot now I call 3ow

24 my lordes. What ayles 3ow at me þat 3e will sla me? Haes Alexander cheriste þe macedoynes mare þauñ I hafe done 3ow? Hafe I no3te sorow & disese ynoghe of enemyse wit-owtteñ? Bot if 3e conspire agaynes me for to sla me wit owtteñ gilt,

28 I say for sothe, & 3e sla me * thus preuelye, And Alexander may gete 3ow, he will take mare cruell vengeance one 3ow, theñ on any theues. For sothely it es na comforthe ne lykyng till ane Emperour to fynd an oper Emperour murthered wit his aweñ

32 meñ.' Bot þay were na-thinge stirrede to petee, ne tendernesse, ne mercy, thurgh his wordez, Bot went till hym and wit grete cruelnesse smate hym, & al-to magle hym, and went faste þaire waye, & lefte hym for dede.

36 ³And wheñ Alexander herd tell þat Darius was slayne he

Alexander hearing of this through treachery marches against Darius.

Two nobles of Darius conspire to slay him that they may have reward of Alexander.

Darius seeing them begs for mercy, and foretells the future vengeance of Alexander. But they slay him.

* Leaf 20 bk.

Alexander hearing of

¹ Five lines space with a capital I.

² MS. *þair* for *þay*, just as on leaf 34, l. 23. Cf. Icelandic *þeir*. There is no mis-

take here, as the two spellings vary *þaire* and *þair* on leaves 34, 54.

³ Four lines with red capital A.

his death enters Susa without resistance. The conspirators hide themselves.

Alexander goes to the room where Darius lies dying.

Alexander has pity on Darius and promises him all he once had if he will but live.

Alexander says he would rather give his own Empire to Darius than behold him dead.

* Leaf 21.

Darius embraces Alexander.

Darius' speech to Alexander on the worthlessness and unsteadfastness of

went ouer þe water of Graunt, and aft his Oste wit hym, and come to þe cetee of Susis. And alsone als þe percynes saw hym, Thay Opened þe zates of þe citee, & rescheyued hym wit grete wirchiþe. And when þe pryncez þat slewe Darius wiste 4 þat Alexander was comen in-to þe citee þay went & helde þam in hidils ay till þay myzte gete knaweynge of Alexander witt, as towchand þat that þay hadd done to Darius. Alexander þan went in-to þe kynges Palace, and as he went þare-in he 8 merueyled hym gretly of þe biggyng þare-off. For Cirus þe kyng of Perse gert bigg it ryally. And the pament þareoffe was made of stanes of dyuerse colours, & þe walles aft enueround wit fyne golde & precyous stanes & sternes lyke to þe firmament, 12 and pelers of golde þat bare vp þe werke. When Alexander saw aft this curious werke, he meruailed hym gretly. And than he went to þe chambre þare Darius laye halfe dede. And alsone als he saw hym he hadd grete rewthe & compassiō 16 of hym, and he tuke off his awenð mantill & couerd [hym] þare-wit, & went and graped his wondes and wepid for hym riȝt tenderly, & said un-til hym. ' Rise vp, sir Darius,' quof he, ' & be of gude comforthe. And als frely as euer þou reioysede thyñ 20 Empire, so mot þou zitt do, And be als myghty, & als gloryouse als euer þou was. I swere the here by oure myzty goddes & by þe faythe in my body, þat here I resigne vn-to the aft thyñ empyre, desyrand souerayngly for to hafe þe lyfe of the, as þe 24 soñ of ¹ þe Fader, For sekerly it es vnfitand & unsemly till ane émpour for to be reioysede of an oþer émpourers mescheffe & disesse, when fortune hase forsaked hym. Telle me, sir, what þay are þat hase thus fareñ wit the, and I sewre þe als I am 28 trew mañ I sail venge the to þe uttereste.' And * when Alexander had said this & mekiñ mare, Sare wepand Darius putt furthe his hande, and layde his arme abowte Alexander nekke, and kyssed his breste, his nekke, & his hande, & saide 32 thir wordez, thare that here folowes. ² ' A, dere soñ Alexander,' quof he, ' als thi heghe witt knawes wele, aft this werlde es corrupt and sett in malice. For þe souerayne forluke of godd, aft thynges knawande fra þe begynnyng, and hafand felyng 36 of þe wirkynges for to come, made mañ in that wyse, at þe

¹ þe is written in above the line in the MS.

² Four lines miniature with ornamented red capital A.

begynnynge, þat nathing es in hym stable ne faste. So þat all
 thynges þat ere passande & werldely, fra þat he faile of all earthly things,
 gouernance, tournes alsoñ tiff hym in contrarye. For if godd^r
 4 hadd^r ordeyned^r all thynges esy to mañd and alwaye wit-owtten
 chaungynge sent hym prosperitee, mañd schulde be lyftede vp
 so hie in pryde & in vayne glorye, þat he solde nozte arett alle
 his wele-fare & his welthe vn-to godd^r, bot tiff his awenñ desert
 8 & his awenñ vertu. And so schulde meñd gaa fra þaire makare.
 On þe toper syde if þe heghe wyssedomñ of godd^r hadd^r made
 þe werlde oñ þat wyse þat all illes and infelicites fell apoñ mañd
 wit-owtten any maner of gudenesse, so many freletese sulde folow
 12 þe kynde of mañd, þat we schulde all be draweñ in-to þe gilder
 of disparaciõ, so þat we solde hafe na triste in þe gudnes of
 godd^r. And þarefore grete godd^r wolde so wisely skifte all
 thynges, þat, wheñ a mañd full of felicitee, thurgh his heghe
 16 pride will nozte knawe his makere, Fra þe heghte of pride in-to
 þe pitte of mekenes & lawnes he moñd be plungedede. So þat he
 þat thurgh pride & felicite forgatt his godd^r; thurgh fallynge in
 wrechidnesse & disesse hafe mynde of his godd^r. Reghte als þou
 20 may see bi me, my dere soñ Alexander, þat was raysede vp so
 hye in pride & vayne glorye, thurgh reches & prosperitee þat
 felle vn-to me, þat I trowed nozte þat I was goddes creature
 bot goddes Felawe. And þañd, thurgh blyndenes of pride,
 24 I couthe nozte see that, þat now, thurgh scharpenesse of mekenes
 and mescheffe, I see clerely & knawes. Bot if it happenñ þat any
 mañd be vmbilappede wit grete infilicitee, so þat he, despairand^r
 of þe grace of godd^r; supposse na remedy, ne nane lukes eftere ;
 28 * þañd oure lorde godd^r raysez hym vp to þe heghte of prosperitee,
 so þat þañd he, þat bi-cause of wrechidnes & infelicitee, myzte
 nozte see godd^r ne knawe hym, thurgh felicite & prosperitee
 knawes þat he, þat may bryng a mañd to lawe state, may rayse
 32 a mañd tiff heghe degree. And he þat may rayse a mañd tiff
 heghe degree, may putt hym to lawnesse agayne, wheñd hym lyst,
 and þare-fore, soñd, late nozte thy hert ryse to hye in pride, for þe
 victoryes þat godd^r hase sent the, if all þou may do now whate þe
 36 list riht as [¹ þou] were a godd^r. Bot alway thynke on thy laste
 ende. For þou ert a dedly mañd, and ilk a day if þou be-halde
 graythely þou may see thy dedd^r bi-fore thyñd eghne. Consedirs

with particular application to himself.

On the presumption of those who have
 * Leaf 21 bk.
 great wealth.

On the power of God to put down the mighty from their seats, and to lift up them of low degree.

¹ þou may have been left out by the scribe beginning a new line.

Darius asks burial of Alexander, and that both peoples should comethere-to. And wills there-to that both empires be one. He bids him be merciful to his widow, and take his daughter Roxana to wife. He dies.

Alexander buries Darius in royal state. He bears the bier himself. The Macedonians and the Persians go before it. Alexander seats himself on the

* Leaf 22. throne of Cyrus, and is crowned with the crown of Darius.

The throne of seven steps with its mystic meanings inwrought.

pou noȝte how oure lyffe may be lykkened to þe werke of Eranes, þat so sotelly makes þaire webbes? Bot alsoñ als a little blaste of wynde puffes apoñ þam, þay breke, & falles to grownde. Behalde & see how glorius I was ȝisterday & how wrechede I am 4 to-day, & how law I am broghte. I was lorde nerehande of all þe werlde, & now I hafe na power of myñ awenð selfe. Now I be-seke the, soñ, þat þou wilt bery me wit thy benynge handes. And suffre for to come to myñ exequise bathe 8 þe Macedoynes and þe persyenes. And fra this tyme forwardz, þe empire of Macedoynne & þe empire of perse be bathe ane. Haffe recomend vn-to the my Moder Rodogon, & trete hir wirchipfully as thyñ awenñ Moder. And I be-seke þe also, 12 þat þou be Mercyable to my wyfe. And if ¹ it be lykyng to þe, take Rosañ my dogheter to thi wyfe. For semely it es, þat ȝe be ioynede to-geder þat er comenð of so wirchipfull progenitours, For þou of kyng Philippe, and scho of kyng Darius. And of 16 ȝow twa may a wirchipfull & a noble fruyte sprynge.' And riȝte as he had saide thir wordez he swelt in Alexander armes. Kyng Alexander, þañ, after þe custoñ was for to bery emperours, gert araye Darius body als ryally as he couthe. 20 And wit añ þe solempnyte and wirchipe þat myghte be done, he helped hym selfe for to bere þe bere, sare wepande, and gert þe Macedoynes & þe Percyenes gaa bi-fore þe bere. The persyenes also weped wonder faste, noȝte allanly for þe dede 24 of Darius, bot for petee of þaire hertis, þat þay saw Alexander wepe so enterely. And when Darius was beried Alexander went agayne to þe palace.

² And one þe morne Alexander went and sett hym in a trone 28 añ of golde & precyous stanes, the whilke Cyrus sumtyme gert * make þat was kyng of Perse. And the Macedoynes and þe Persyenes sett apoñ his hede a coroune þat was Darius, þe whilke was so precious, þat menð knewe nane like it in na lande. ȝ2 For añ þe palace schane thurgh bryghtness of þe precyous stanes, þat were sett þare-in. And þe trone was añ of golde, & of precyous stanes, & of þe sege þare-offe was vii seuen³ cubeteȝ heghe fra þe grounde, and a grece of seuen greeȝ was made ȝ6

¹ it written in above by the scribe.

² Two lines space with miniature A.

³ 'vii' occurs at the end of one line, and 'seven' at the beginning of the next.

pare-to, whare-by kynges ascended pare-to. And thir greez were made wonder craftyly & curyously. The firste gree was of ane amatist. The seconde gree was of a Smaragd. The thredd⁴ gree was of a Topaz. The ferthe gree was of a granat. The fifte was of ane adamand. The sext was of fynd golde. And the seuent was of clay. And thay ware nozt ¹[wit-o]wtteid grete cause; ordeyned oue þis wyse.

8 For þe first gree w[as a]ne² amatist, for amange all oper stanes it hase this vertu, that it represses & haldez donne þe fumositee of wyne & þe myghte pare-offe, & suffers nozte a maid þat bere it³ on hym be troubled in his witt ne in his mynde
12 thurgh drownkeness. And, on þe same wise, solde ilke a kyng be of perfite witt & mynde, & thurgh nane occasion do na mysse. The secund gree was of a Smaragd, þe whilke clarifyez & kepez þe sighte of hym þat beres [it] apoid hym, and so schulde
16 a kyng hafe clere sighte of his hert, wysely for to see & discerne that þat es spedfull & profitable bathe for hym selfe & for þe comon profit. The thirdd gree was of a Topaz, þe whilke es so clere, þat & a maid bi-halde hym selfe pare-in, it sall seme
20 tiff hym, as his hede ware tournede downwardez, and his fete vpwardez; And it be-takenes þat a kyng schulde alway take hede tiff his laste ende. The ferthe gree was of a Granat whilk passez all manere of precious stanes in reedness: & betakens
24 þat a kyng suld be schamfull for tiff consent tiff any thyng þat es vnlefull. The fifte was of ane Adamande. Þe Adamande es so harde þat it may nozte be broken nowþer with yreid ne wit stane, bot if it firste be enoynted wit gayte blode. Ou þe same
28 wyse a kyng suld be of so grete constance & sadnesse þat, for na prayere, ne for na worldely gude, he solde nozte bewgh fra þe way of ryght-wisnesse. The sexte gree was of fyne gold: for rihte as gold passez all maner of metalle in bewtee, & in pre-
32 ciouste; rihte so a kyng awe to be⁴ preferred before oper men & governours of þa. * Þe seuent was of Clay, tiff þat entent þat a maid þat es raysed vp to þe dingnyte of a kyng sulde alway vmblythynk hym þat he was made of erthe, & at þe laste

The first step of amethyst, that a king be not drunken but walk soberly and steadfastly. The second of emerald, that a king see well those things which belong to his rank. The third of topaz, which reminds him of his latter end, showing him upside down. The fourth of garnet, which makes him shame to do unlawfully. The fifth of diamond, which means that a king should be righteous. The sixth of gold, to show the greatness of kings.
* Leaf 22 bk. The seventh of clay, to

¹ Piece gone in MS. Reads — *witten*. The beginning of a *w* occurs before the hole, and the latter half of an *o* after it— so it must clearly be read '*witowtten*'.

² MS. *w* and a gap follows as above;

read, of course, '*was a*'.

³ *it* written in above line.

⁴ MS. has in another hand in bottom of margin '*preferred before*' written over again.

show him
above all
he is but
dust and
deathly.

Alex-
ander's
letter to all
lands—ann-
ouncing
that he sits
on the
throne of
Darius.
He orders
that all
things
should be
as they
were
before.

He com-
mands
security of
tenure to
all, and free
trade be-
tween
Hellas and
all Persia.
Alexander
promises a
fitting re-
ward to
them that
slew
Darius.

They de-
clare them-
selves.

* Leaf 23.
Alexander
bids them
be taken

to þe erthe he saff agayne. When Alexander was sett apou this trone, coronde wit his diademe, & þe Macedoynes & þe persenes standyng abowte hym: be-fore þam alle he gert write a lettre till all cuntree3, þat was of this tenour. 4

¹ 'Alexander the son of godd' Amou & qwene Olympias kyng of kynges & lorde of lordes, till alle Dukes, Prynce3, Erles, Barouns, maisters, & till all þe folke3 of Perse: ioy & grace. Seid it es plesynge to godd, þat I sitt one þe trone of Darius, & be 8 lorde of þe persyenes, grete cause I hafe for to be reioyist gretely þare-offe, ne were it for þe gret multitude of folke þat ere slayne. Bot seid it so es þat godd hase ordeynede me to be 3our lorde,² and 3our gouernour, þare-fore we commande 3ow þat in 12 ilke a citee, thurghowte þe lordchipe of Perse, 3e ordeyne prynce3 and gouernours as þare was in Darius tyme, to þe whilke we commande 3ow þat 3e be obeyande as 3e before-tymes hafe bene, and that þay do rizte till ilke a mañ at þaire powere. 16 Also it es oure will and oure commandement, þat ilke a mañ welde & reioyse paysabily his landes and his possessiouns. We commande alsoo, þat fra this lande of perse vn-till Ellada, & fra thethyñ to Macedoyne, be redy way & opeñ so þat ilke a mañ 20 þat will may passe bathe in and owte, wit merchandyse or any oper erandes þat þay hafe at do, and Joy & pese be vn-to 3owe.'

³ þan gert Alexander all meñ be still, and said one this wyse: 'Whilke of 3ow so slew myñ enemy Darius; come3 forthe be-for 24 me, and I shaft giffe 3ow worthy mede, & conable wirchipe do þam, I swere bi oure godde3 þat ere Almy3ty, & bi my moste biloved' moder Olympias, þat I saff gyffe þam worthy mede.' When Alexander had saide thir wordes þe persyenes wepede 28 wonderly sare. And than þe twa mañ-morthireres Bisso and Aryobarzantes come bi-fore Alexander, and sayde vn-till hym: 'Wirchipfull emperour,' quop þay, 'we ere thase þat slew Darius thyne enemy wit oure Awenñ hende.' And when 32 Alexander saw þam, he bade his knyghtes belyfe ga & take þam, & bynde * þam, & lede þam to Darius grafe, & þare smyte of paire heuedes. And than þay ansuert, & saide vn-till Alexander: 'A, A, wirchipfull emperour,' quop þay, 36

¹ Ten lines blank space for a miniature.

² In MS. between 'be 3our lorde' and 'and 3our gouernour' is written '& lorde

of þe persyenes', but it has been erased by the scribe.

³ Three lines space with red capital p.

- ‘swore þou noȝte tilf vs, bi oure goddeȝ þat ere Almyȝty, & bi þe hele of thi moder Olympias, þat þou solde gerre do vs na harme, bot þat þou solde giff vs a worthi reward.’ And
- 4 Alexander saide agayne vn-to þam: ‘So aughte me wele for to swere, for to gette knawying of þe slaers of Darius. For I solde neuer hafe getyñd knawying þare-offe had I noȝte sworne so. And
- 8 jitt I saff safe myñd athe wele yuoghe. For it was al-way myñd entent, þat if I myȝte wete what þay ware, þay solde hafe swilke a rewarde. For þay þat slaes þaire awenñd lorde it es a taken þat þay will hafe na conscience to sla anoþer mañ.’ And
- 12 when þe perseyenes herde this þay by-gañd to prayse Alexander & to commende hym and blysse hym as he had bene a godd. þam kyng Alexander gert hede tha twa homycydes. And aft þe rewme he sett in gouernance of certayne lordes. Amanges
- 16 oper þare was ane alde lorde was eme to Darius, þe whilke highte Climitus, þat was gretly luffede wif þe persyenes; And Alexander at þe request of aft the persyenes ordeyned hym for to be chefe gouernour vnder hym of aft perse. And one þe morne Alexander sett hym in his trone, wif his corouñ on his hede,
- 20 and efter þe bidding of Darius he commande to brynge bi-fore hym Rosañ, Darius doghter, wif a corouñ oñ hir hede, sett full of precious stanes. And þare, as þe maner was of þe persyenes, he tuke hir to his wyfe, and made hir to sitt wif hym in his
- 24 trone & command aft meñ to wirchipe hir als quene. And þam þe persyenes were wonderly glade, & onane þay broȝte þaire goddeȝ bi-fore Alexander, and bi-gañd to wirchipe hym, & loue hym riȝte als he hade bene a godd, and said vn-till hym,
- 28 hallely wif a voyce, ‘þou thi selfe es a godd, For that þat es plesande tilf oure goddes alway þou dose.’ And when Alexander saw this, he was gretly troubled & riȝte ferde & said vn-to þam: ‘Wirchipfull sirs,’ quop he, ‘I pray ȝow þat ȝe
- 32 wirchipe me noȝte as a godd, for sothely I am as ȝe are, a corruptele & a dedly mañ, and in me þare es na parcell of the godhede. And þarefore, I beseke ȝow, cesseȝ of this wirchipe þat ȝe do me.’
- 36 1 þan gert Alexander write a lettre tilf Olympias his moder & tilf Arestotle his maister, makand meneyoñ of aft þe batayffis & þe disesseȝ þat he hadd suffred in Perse, and of þe grete reches

and be-headed. They plead his own words. But it avails them nought.

They are slain. Alexander makes Darius' uncle governor of the Persians.

Alexander weds Roxana, Darius' daughter.

The Persians worship Alexander as a god.

He chides them for it.

Alexander writes to his mother and to Aristotle.

1 Five lines with large capital þ.

He com-
*Leaf 23
bk.
mands an
eight days'
feast for
the mar-
riage.
Alexander
marches
against
Porus of
India,
through
waste
country,
with great
rivers and
caverns.
The Mace-
donians
murmur at
the contin-
ued
wars and
marches,
and against
Alex-
ander's
ambition.
They fain
would
leave him.

King Alex-
ander
divides the
Mace-
donians
and the
Persians.

Alexander
rebukes the
Greeks
that they
would
leave him
alone with
rebellious
Persians.
He reminds
them of
what he
has done

pat he fandē pare, of þe whilke he & aʃ his meñ ware made riche. And also he wrate vn-to þaṁ,* þat þay scholde make grete solempnytee lastyng aghte dayes be-cause of þe weddyng of Alexander & Rosaṁ Darius doghter. And so did Alexander, 4 in Perse, wit þe macedoynes & þe persyenes. many a daye.

¹ Aʃter this kyng Alexander sembled a grete Oste, bathe of macedoyns & of persyenes, and went towarde Inde for to werre apoṁ Porus, kyng of Inde, þe whilke ordeynede hym for to 8 come & helpe kyng Darius. And, when Alexander was entered in-tiff Inde, he went thurgh wildernes & waste cuntree, whare iu ware grete reuers and many grete caues & cauernes. And þaṁ Alexander & his meñ wex wery, & irkede riȝte sare. And 12 þe prynces of macedoyne & of grece murmourede amange; þaṁ gretly, & saide ilkaṁ tiff oþer: 'It myȝte hafe sufficed tiff vs, þat we hafe ouer-sett kyng Darius, & conqerred þe kyngdom 16 of Perse. Where-be seke we forthire in-tiff Inde, þe whilke es full of wilde bestez, and leues oure awenṁ landez. Ne þis Alexander nane oþer thynges desyre, bot for to wende abowte and thurgh werre to bryngē aʃ þe worlde vndere his subieccion. For werre & debate unresche; his body so fer furth þat, and he 20 ristede any lange tyme witowtē werre, riȝte als it were for defaute of mete he schulde faile & dye. Leue we hym þarefore, and turne we agayne vn-tiff oure awenṁ cuntree, and late hym wende furthe wit the persyenes, if he wiff.' When 24 Alexander herde þis, he garte aʃ þe Oste habide, and he went and stodde in ane heghe place amange; þaṁ, & sayde one this wise: 'Departis ȝow in twaa, so þat þe persyenes be by þaṁ-selfe and þe Macedoynes and þe grekes bi þaṁ-selfe.' 28 And when þay hadd' so done, Alexander saide to þe Macedoynes and þe grekes: 'A A, myne owenṁ dere knyghtis,' quof he, 'wele [ȝe] knawe þat thir persyenes, vn-to þis day, hase bene con- 32 trary & rebelles vn-to ȝow & to me, and ȝe wiff now lefe me here wit þaṁ, and tourne agayne to ȝour awenṁ cuntree. Wele ȝe wate, þat when ȝour hertes were troubbledē, & fered, for þe wordes þat ware contened in Darius lettres, I thurgh my speche & my consef comforthed ȝour hertis. And afterwarde, when we 36 come in-to þe felde agaynes oure enemys, I went bi-fore ȝow aʃ.

¹ Four lines with miniature A with a springing from it. Small a written in the barrel drawn within on its side, and a tree margin beside it.

And I by mynd ane was þe firste mañ þat entrede þe batayle.
 And 3itt more-ouer, as 3e wele wate, I tuke apouñ me for to be
 3oure allere messangere vn-to kyng Darius. And þare, for
 4 3ow, I putt my selfe in many grete * perills. And þarefore,
 witte3 wele for certayne, þat, rizte as hedirtowarde3, we hafe
 ouercomeñ oure enemys and hade þe better of þaũ, rizte so fro
 hepein-forwarde3, thurgh þe helpe of oure godde3 we sañt ouer-
 8 come oure enemys. & hafe þe victorye of þaũ. And þarefore I
 say 3ow forsothe, þat, all if 3e will tourne agayne to grece &
 macedoyne, I sañt no3te tourne agayne oũ na wyse, þat 3e may
 knawe þat, wit-owtten̄ gouernance of a kyng, nane Oste may
 12 wynne na wirchipe.' Wheñ Alexander had said þus, all þe
 prynce3 of Macedoyne and of þe grekes schamede gretely, and
 askede mercy & forgifnesse, sayande one this wyse: 'Moste
 wirchippull emperour, oure lyfe lyes hallyly in 3our hande.
 16 Whedir so euer 3e will goo we will gladly felowe 3our hye
 maistee; þofe we schulde all dye for 3ow oũ a daye, we sañt
 folow 3ow & neuer lese 3ow.' And þaũ þay remoued fra þeinne¹
 and come in-till a cuntree of Inde þat es called Phisiacẽ, in þe
 20 laste ende of July. And þare mette hym þe embassatours of
 Porus kyng of Inde, and broghte hym lettres fra Porus, þat said
 oũ this wyse.

² ' Porus kyng of Inde : vn-to þe theeffe Alexander, þat thurgh
 24 thifte & robbery many citee3 wynne3, bidding we send. Señ
 þou ert dedely: wharto wene3 þou þat þou ert of powere to
 agaynstande godd̄ þat es vn-dedely. A grete fole, me thynke,
 þou ert þat hase eghne, and cane nott see. Trowes þou we be lyke
 28 vn-to þe pereyenes þat þou hase made subiecte3 vn-to the? Þou
 hase foughteñ hedir-towarde wit softe meñ & cowarde3, & for
 þou hase ouercomeñ þaũ, þou wene3, þat thi littillness sañt
 bryngre oure hye maistee vnder thi subieccion; þe whilke es
 32 vnpossyble for to bee, bot if godde3 submytt þaũ vn-to meñ,
 and þe erthe be euen lyke to þe heueñ. I late the wiete, þat I
 may no3te be ouercommẽd for no3te allanly meñ bot also godde3
 doee3 seruyce to my name. Wate þou no3te wele, þat ane
 36 Dynise, þe fader of Bachus, come in-till Inde, wit a grete Oste
 for to feghte, bot onane he tournede þe bakke & fledd̄, for he

for them,
 and what
 they will
 do to-
 gether.

* Leaf 24.

But what-
 ever they
 do, he will
 go on-
 wards.

They be-
 come
 ashamed of
 themselves
 and beg for
 forgive-
 ness.

They con-
 tinue their
 march and
 meet the
 ambas-
 sadors of
 Porus.

Porus'
 letter to
 Alexander.

He tells
 him of the
 superiority
 of the
 Indians to
 the Per-
 sians.

The gods
 also fight
 for India.
 The
 Indians
 overcame
 Dionysius.

¹ MS. reads *þeiñe*.

² Four lines space for miniature *P*. *P* written in the page beside it.

He advises him to go back again to Macedonia. Before Xerxes' time the Macedonians gave tribute to India, but the Indians recked

* Leaf 24 bk.

naught of Macedonia, for it was a barren and little land.

Alexander's knights are troubled at the letter.

He tells them Eastern folks are like wild beasts trusting but in their strength.

Alexander's letter to Porus. Porus' words have stirred on the Greeks to win so great and fruitful a land as India, as well as to crush Porus' pride. For Porus is but a

was nozte of powere to agaynstande þe vertu of meñ of Inde. And þarefore, or any schame or mischeffe comð to þe; we counsel the & commandeþ the, þat in all þe haste þat þou may, þou tourne hame agayne to thyne awenð lande. Fore wele þou 4 knowes, þat, bi-fore 3erses was kynge of Perse, þe macedoynes gaffe tribute till Inde. Bot, by-cause þat þaire lande es barayne & vnprofitable, & na thynges þer-in plesande till a kynge: þe meñ of Inde sett nozte þare-by. For ilke a mañ, 8 desyres mare a large lande & a plenteuous: þan *a strayte lande & a barayne. And þarefore, 3itt the thirde tourne, I comaunde the that þou tourne hame to thyne awenð lande. And neuer, in thi lyfe, couette to hafe Lordschipe þare þou may nane gete.' 12

¹ Wheñ þis *lettre* was comeñ till Alexander, he gerte rede it be-fore all meñ. And wheñ his knyghtis hadð herde þe tenour of þis *lettre*, þay were trublede. And Alexander sayde vn-to þam: 'My wirchippfull knyghtis,' quop he, 'late nozte 3our 16 hertis be trublede ne fered for Porus *lettre*. Hafe 3e nozte in mynde, wit how grete pride Darius wrate vn-till vs dyuerse tymes? I say 3ow sotheley þat all þe folke of thyse Este parties hase þaire hertis & þaire wittis lyke vn-to þe bestes þat þay 20 duelle wit-all, þat es at say, Tygres, Pardes, & oþer wilde bestis, whilke full selden ere slaenð of meñ, and þare-fore þay triste all in þaire strengthe.' And wheñ Alexander hade said thir wordes, he garte writte a *lettre* vn-to Porus kynge of Inde 24 whare-of this was the tenour.

² 'Kynge of kynges and lorde of lordes, Alexander þe soñ of godd' Amoid & þe quene Olympias, vn-to Porus we sende. Þou hase scharpede oure wittes, & gyffend vs hardynesse for to feghte 28 agaynes þe, whare þou says þat macedoyne es bot a littiff lande & barayne of all thyng þat gude es. And Inde, þou says, es large, & plenteuous of all gudeþ & reches. And þare-fore we sail enforce vs to feghte wit the at all oure myghte, for to con- 32 quere thi landes þat, þou sais, es so full of reches. And, for þou haldez vs pouer, & of na reputacioñ, þare-fore we desire for to ascende to þe heghte of thi majestie. And also þare þou says, þat nozte allanly vn-to meñ, bot also vn-to goddez þou erte 36 emperour, I sail come to the, for to feght wit þe, as wit añ

¹ Three lines with miniature IV and small *w* written alongside in the margin.

² Eleven lines blank space without either miniature or small letter at side.

haytheñ mañ full of Pompe & pride and vayne glory, & nozte as wit a godd. For all þe werlde may nozte ¹agaynstand þe wrethe of a godd. Þer-fore, señ þe elementis of this aere, þat
 4 es at say Thunners, leuenuygez and water, may nozte bere þe indygnacion of goddez, how schulde þañ dedely meñ mowe agaynstande paire wrethe? And þare-fore I late the* wele witte þat þi founde proudde speche troublez me nozte ne mouez
 8 me neuer a dele.'

² When Porus hadd this lettre, he was wondere wrathe & assemblede a grete Oste of meñ, and a grete multitude of Olyphanntes wit þe whilke þe meñ of Inde ere wount for to
 12 feghte, and went agaynes Alexander. This Oste of Porus was rihte grete & strange, for þare ware þer in xiiij. cartes of were and viij^c Oliphanntez, and ilk an Olyphante hadd a toure of tree apouñ his bakke, & in ilke a toure xxx meñ. Þare ware also
 16 oper feghting meñ on horse and on fote wit-owten nowmer. And when þe Macedoynes and þe persyenes sawe þe grete multitude bathe of meñ & of Olyphauntez, þay were fered, & gretely stonayde. Neuer þe lesse, bathe þe partyes ordayned
 20 þañ to batell, and arayed paire batells, Alexander on his syde, and Porus on his syde. And Alexander lepe vp-on his horse Buktiphalas & prikkede bi-fore all his meñ, and comanded, þat þe Medoynes & þe persyenes sulde firste begynñ to feghte.
 24 And so þay did; & hym selfe wit þe grekes, and þe macedoynes stode on þe toþer syde, redy to succour þañ when myster ware. And for þe Olyphauntez also, Alexander gert make suylike añ ordynance. He gert make xxiiij ymagez of brasse, and gert fill
 28 þañ full of dry wodde. And he gerte make also cartes of yreñ, for to bere thir ymagez before þe Olyphauntez and when þe Ostez came nere to-gedir he gert sett fyre in þe wodd þat was in þe ymages. And when þe Olyphauntez saw þir ymages, þay
 32 wende þat þay hadd bene meñ and schott owte paire groynes, as þay were wount for to do for tilf hafe weryed þañ. And alsone thurgh þe grete hete, þay were bryuned and thañ thay gaffe bakke, & fledd for drede to brynne payre groynes. And
 36 þare-fore þe meñ þat were abowñ in þe toures myghte nozte wyñ to for to feghte. And when Porus saw that he was reghte

heathen man full of pride. He threatens him with the wrath of the gods.

* Leaf 25.

Porus is angered at the letter and gathers a great army with elephants. Its numbers and array.

Alexander's allies are startled by the appearance of the elephants and the Indian army.

Alexander's device for overcoming the elephants.

¹ *agaynstand* written in the margin, with a mark of insertion over against it in the text.

² Four lines space with red capital *W*. Small *w* in margin next it.

The allies begin the battle and fight for thirty days. When exhausted they are re-

* Leaf 25 bk.

placed by the Greeks and Macedonians.

Utter defeat of the Indians and flight of Porus.

Siege and capture of Porus' city. The riches of Porus' palace.

The walls were plated with gold an inch thick.

The palace gates were of ivory and ebony.

The wonders of the hall. The golden birds that sang as though alive.

sary. Það þe Medoynes & þe persyenes, wit arowes and speres & oper dyuerse wapynes of werre, slewe thykfalde of þe meñ of Inde. And thus þay faghte contenuelly xxx^{ti} days, & mekiñ pople of bathe þe parties ware dede. And at þe laste þe 4 Medoynes, & þe persyenes, begað faste for to fayle. And whēñ Alexander saw that, he was wondere wrathe, and entrede in-to þe batēñe, sittand on his horse Buctiphalas, *and faghte mann- 8 fully, & þe grekes & þe macedoynes wit hym. And his horse also helped hym gretely. And thañ belyfe þe Indynes begað gretely for to fayle. And whēñ Porus saw that he turned þe bakke & fledd. And það þe Indynes þat ware leste oñ lyfe fledd also. And Alexander lugeð hym thare wit his Oste and 12 made Sacrafice till his goddeꝝ and commaunded for to bery þe dedd bodys, bathe of Indynes & of þe persyenes & þe Macedoynes.

¹ Sone after, apouñ a day, Alexander ensegedd Porus citee & 16 wand it, and went in-till Porus Palace, whare-Ind he fande² mare riches það any mañ witt trowe. For he fande þare-in xñ pelers of Massy golde, ilkañ of a grete thikness & a grete lenthe, wit þaire chapytrales. And bitwene þe pelers of golde, 20 ware hyngande venetteꝝ of golde & syluere, wit leues of golde. And þe brawncheꝝ of this venett ware sunñ of cristalle, sunñ of Margariteꝝ, sunñ of Smaragdes, & sunñ of Onyches, and þay semed as þay hade bene verray vynes. Þe walles also of þe 24 palace ware couerde all ouer wit plates of golde, þe whilke whēñ þe Macedoynes cutte in soundre & brakke, þay fande þat þay ware a gret ynche thikke. And þir walles ware sett full of diuerse precious stanes, þat es at say, of charebuncles, Smaragdes, 28 Margarites & Amatistes. And þe zates of þe Palace ware of Euour wonder whitt, & þe bandeꝝ of það, & þe legges of Ebene. Þe chambirs, also, of þis Palace, were all of Cipresse, and þe beddeꝝ in það ware sett full of Margariteꝝ, Smaragdeꝝ, & 32 charebuncles. Þe hauff, also, of þis Palace, was sett full of ymages of golde, & bi-twix það stode perlatanes of golde, in þe branches of whilke þare were many manners of fewles & ilke a fewle was colourede, & paynted after his kynde asked, þe 36 bekes of það, & þe clowes ware all of fyne golde. And ay,

¹ Four lines with red capital ornate S, and small s in margin beside.

² MS. repeats *he fande* twice.

when Porus liste, thir fewles thurgh crafte of music walde syng after paire kynde askede & was. He fande also in þat Palace veselles wit-owteñ nowmer, sumñ of golde, sumñ of Cristaffe, 4 Sumñ of oper maneres of precyouse stanes, sumñ of Suluere, and þat all maner of vesell þat meñ sulde be serued offe. Bot þare were bot fewe of þaun of Siluere.

The riches of the treasury. There is but little silver.

1 Fra thethyñ, Alexander remowede his Oste & come to þe 8 gates of Caspee, and þare he lugeð hymñ. It was a noble lande & a gude. Bot þare ware þare-In many maners * of nedders and of wilde bestez. Fra þeine Alexander sent a lettre till Talifride quene of Amazonñ, of þis tenour.

* Leaf 26.

12 2 'Kyng of kynges, and lorde of lordes, Alexander, þe soñ of godd' Amoñ, & þe quene Olympias, vn-to Talifride þe quene of Amazonñ, ioy. The grete Batayñles þat we hafe hadd' wit kyng Darius, & how we hafe conquered' all his rewme, and his 16 lordchipes, we trowe be noghte unknaweñ vn-to 3ow. And also how we hafe foghteñ with Porus þe kyng of Inde & his cheeffe citee wonneñ. And also wit many oper folkes, & þay ware neuer of powere to agaynestande vs, þe whilke we suppose 20 be nozte vknaweñ vn-to 3owe. Whare-fore we sende 3ow worde, & commande3 3ow, þat 3e sende vs tribute, if 3e wilt þat wee comñ nozte to 3ow to do 3ow disesse.'

Alexander's letter to the Queen of the Amazons mentioning his victories and demanding tribute.

And vn-to this lettre Talifride made ansuere by lettre one this 24 wyse.

The answer of the Queen of the Amazons. She has heard of his victory. She warns him of the danger of attacking the Amazons.

3 'Talyfride quene of Amazonñ wit oper grete ladys of oure rewme, vn-till Alexander, kyng of Macedoyne, joy. We hafe wele herde tesse of þe hye witt þat es in the, thurgh whilke þou 28 hase in mynde thynges þat ere passede, and dispose3 thynges þat ere present, and knawe3 thynges þat ere to come. Ayyse the wele þarefore are þou come till vs, what trebulacionnez & disesse may fatte the in thi commynge. For þare was neuer 32 nane 3it þat werreyed agayne3 vs þat ne he had' schame þare-offe at þe ende. And þare-fore take hede to thi last ende. For grete schame it es till a wyse mañ thurgh indiscrecion to fatte in mescheffe. Bot if it be lykyng to þe, to knawe our con- 36 uersacyonñ, and oure habitacionñ, we declare it vn-to þe be oure

She describes their land

¹ Three lines with miniature capital *F* and small *f* beside in the margin.

² Four lines with ornate capital *K* and small *k* in margin beside.

³ Twelve lines space for miniature which is lacking. Written in the margin is 'Regina Talibus cum duabus astantibus'.

and their manners. They are in an island girdled round by a river. The men dwell on the other side of the river. How they breed their kind.

* Leaf 26 bk.

How they ride to war.

Their husbands honour them at their return. They will fight Alexander, who will get no honour through victory over women, but rather if he be overthrown, to the women shall it be great honour, to him great shame. Alexander laughs and sends them another letter, telling them that he has conquered three parts of the world and never been withstood.

present *lettres*, þat oure *habitacio* es in ane Ile, þat es closede abowte wit a grete reuer þat noþer hase bygynnyng nor endynnge. Bot on a syde we hafe a straye entree. And the nowmer of women þat duellez þer-in es ccciiii^m þat ere nozte 4 filed wit meñ. For oure husbandez duellez nozte amangez vs ne no noþer mañ, Bot on þe toper syde of þe reuer. And ilke a zere we make a solempne feste in the wirchipe of Iubiter xxx days. And þañ we go till oure husbandes, and duellez 8 wit þañ oþer xxx dayes & hase oure luste and oure disporte * to-gedir as kynde askes. And if any of vs consayfe & bere a childe if it be a male þe modere kepis it seuen zere and thañ sendez it to þe fadere. And if scho bere a maydeñ 12 childe þe moder haldez it wit hir & techez it oure maners. When we goo to werre agayne zoure enemys we ere c^m rydand one horse wele armede. And suñ of vs hase bowes & arowes, and suñ speres, and oþer diuerse waypne. And þe remanent 16 kepez oure Ile. And when we come wit the victorye oure husbandez does vs grete wirchipe. And þare-fore if þou come agaynes vs we late the witt þat we will feghte wit the at all oure myzte. And if it happen þat þou hafe þe victory of vs, 20 wirchipe sañ it nane be to the bi-cause þou hase discomfit women. And if we discomfit the, it sañ be an heghe wirchippe till vs, þat we may discomfit so wirchippull an emperour; and to the it sañ be a hye reprove. Where-fore we sygnifie vn-to 24 þe by oure *lettres* þat þou come nozte agaynes vs for sekerly þare may grete dysese come þare-offe, þat peraventure þou knawe3 nozte now offe at þis tymme.'

When Alexander hadd' redd' þis *lettre*, he begañ to lawghe. 28 And onane he garte writte an oþer *lettre*, and sent it to Talyfride, whare-offe þe tenour was this.

¹ ' Alexander kyng of kynges and of lordez, the soñ of godd' Amoñ & þe qwene Olympias, to Talyfride quene of Amazon 32 and þe oþer ladys of þe same rewme: ioy. We late zow weite þat thre parties of þe werlde, þat es to say, Asye, Affric, & Europe we hafe conquered and made subiects vn-till vs, & þare was neuer nane of þañ þat myzte agaynstande oure powere. 36 And if we now suld nozte be of powere, to feghte with zowe it ware ane heghe schame till us. Neuer-þe-lesse for als mekiñ

¹ Thirteen lines blank space for a miniature.

als we lufe *your conuersacion* we counsell þat 3e come¹ forth of
your Ile & *your husbondez* wit 3ow, and appere in oure
 presence. For we swere 3ow bi god² Amoñ oure Fader, & by
 4 all oure goddez þat 3e sall hafe na disesse of vs. Bot gyffe3 vs
 sumwhat in name of tribute and we schall fynd 3ow and 3oure
 Amazons þat come * wit 3ow horse yuowe. And wheñ 3ou
 listees for to wende hame agayne, 3e schall hafe gude leue.³
 8 And wheñ þe Amazons hadd³ redd³ þis *lettre*, þay went to
 counsell, and thoghte it was beste for to ascent vu-till hym.
 And það þay sent hym x stedes þe beste þat myzte be fundeñ
 in any cuntree, and x oper horse þe beste þat myzte be geteñ,
 12 and a grete sunñ of golde. And Talifride hir selfe and oper
 ladys wit hir went un-till hym, and accorded³ wit hym, and
 went hame agayne, wonder glade and blythe.

² In þe mene tyme it was talde Alexander, þat Porus, þe kyng
 16 of Inde, was in Bactriceñ, and assembled³ a grete Oste for to
 feghte eftsonns wit hym. And wheñ Alexander herde this, he
 remowede his Oste, and chese owte c.l of duyeres þat knewe þe
 cuntree, for to hafe þe gouernance of his Oste, and to lede það
 20 seurlly thurgh þat strange cuntree. In þe Monethe of Auguste,
 wheñ þe soñ es maste hate, þay bigað for to take þaire iournee.
 And thay went thurgh a dry cuntree, sandye, & wit-owttenð
 water. And nedlynge3 það byhoued³ wende armede, þare was
 24 so grete plentee of neddirs, and cruett³ wylde bestes. For
 thies forsaid gyde3 ware mare faurable to Porus, það till
 Alexander & his Oste, and þare-fore þay ledd³ það thurgh
 swilke barrayne and perilous cuntree3. And wheñ Alexander
 28 saw it schope thus, and that his counsell byfore had sayd þe sothe,
 þat es at say, bathe his awnñ frende3 and meñ of Caspy, þat
 conseld³ hym þat he suld nozte hie hym ouerfaste, ne triste to
 mekiñ to stranzgers; þan he commanded³ þat all meñ schulde
 32 wende armed³: & so þay did³. And það all þe Oste schane ri3te
 as it had³ bene sternes, for sum of þaire armours ware of golde,
 sunñ of siluer, and sunñ of precious stanes. And wheñ Alexander
 saw þe araye of his Oste, and þaire baners bi-fore það
 36 Schynande so faire, he was ri3te gladd³. Neuer-þe-les grete
 disese he hadd³, þat nowþer he, ne his meñ, myzte fynde na water.

He summons them before him and advises them to give tribute.

* Leaf 27.

The Amazons assent to the terms of the letter.

Alexander moves his army against Porus through the desert in the month of August. The desert is waterless and full of snakes and wild beasts, for the guides were favourable to Porus. Alexander then remembers the wise words of his council. They all go armed, so that the whole army gleams like the stars, with banners and a shining mail.

¹ MS. *cone*.

² Six lines with miniature *I*, covering with

its foliage three-quarters of the margin.

³ *wh* turned into *wy*.

A Macedonian knight finds water in a hollow and brings it to Alexander in his helmet. Alexander refuses it lest he alone of all go refreshed. He

*Leaf 27 bk.

casts it down upon the rocks and goes without, so that all his followers are comforted as though they had drunken water.

On the morrow they come to a river with reeds on its banks as high as pine trees. They drink of the water; it slew many of them with a flux.

Alexander is greatly distressed, not only for his knights but also for the many beasts of burden that bear their things, and the flocks and herds that go with them.

So it felle þat a knyghte of Macedoyne þat hyzte zephilus fand water standyng in an holle stane, þat was gadird þare of þe dewe of þe heuen, the whilke þis forsaide knyghte putt in his Bacenett, & brozthe it till Alexander for to drynke. And 4 Alexander saide un-till hym, 'I suppose,' quop he, 'þat I drynke þis water, sall þe Macedoynes & þe persyenes be any thyng refreschede þareby, or I sall hafe all þe refreschyng be my selfe.' And he ansuerd, & saide, 'þou all ane lorde,' quop he, 'sall be 8 comforthed þareby.' Quop Alexander þan, 'And * if ze¹ sall all perische trowes þou þat it solde be lykand to mee, for to lyfe in sorowe & disese seyng þe dedd of þe Macedoynes & þe persyenes?' And be-lyue he garte helle down þe water on þe 12 erthe be-fore all his men. And when his knyghtis saw that, þay were hugely comforthede þare-by rihte als Ilkañ of þan hadd dronken a grete draughte of water, and þan went furthe þaire waye. And on þe morne, þay come till a reuere whase 16 bankes was growand full of grete redys & þay ware als hye as pyne-treese; 3a, for þe maste partie of x^l fote lange. Than badd [he] that þay drawe of þe water and bryng to þe Oste. Bot all þat dranke þare-offe it keste þan in-till a flux, and slewe 20 a grete hepe of þam. For þat water was wonder scharpe, and als bittire als any mekill gyse. Bot þan was Alexander gretly disessedd & all his Oste nozte allanly of þan-selfe, bot also for þaire horsez & þaire bestez þat þay ledd wit þan þe whilke bi-gan 24 for to faile for thyrste. Alexander hadd wit hym a thowsande Olyphantez þat bare his golde, And foure hundreth cartes of werre and jm & cc waynez. He hadd also in his Oste ccc^m horse men and muyles & camelles witowten nowmer, þat bare þaire 28 vetails, and oþer thynges þat was necessarye to þe Oste; also oxen and kye, schepe and swyne, wit-owten nowmer, þe whilke perischt for defaute of drynke. Sun of Alexander knyghtes lykked Ireñ, Sun dranke oyle, & sum ware at so grete meschefe 32 þat þay dranke þaire awen stalyng. And there was so grete habundance of nedders & oþer venymous bestez, þat þam byhoued nedez trauelle armed, and þat was a grete nuy to þam & an heghe disese. þan was Alexander wonder² sorye & namely 36 for þe disese þat his Oste suffrede.

¹ On first side of leaf 27 ze sall is written, but on the second side ze schal.

² MS. undoubtedly reads *worder*, but one must substitute *wonder*.

1 And as þay went endlande þis reuere, abowte þe viii houre
 of þe day, þay come till a castell þat stode in a littill Ile in þis
 forsaid ryuere; And this castell was made of þe forsaid rede.

4 Þe brede of this ryuer was foure furlange lenth. And in þat
 castell þay save a few meñ. And þan Alexander bad his meñ
 spirre þan þat ware in þe castell in þe langage of Inde whare
 þay myghte fynde any swete watir able for to drynke. And

8 also soñ als þay spake to þan þay with-drewe þan & hidd.
 And Alexander gerte schotte arowes in-to þe castell and þan
 þay hidd þan wele þe mare. And when Alexander saw *that
 þay walde one na wyse speke wit hym, he hadd a certane of his

12 knyghtes nakne þam & swyme ouer þe water to þe castell. And
 þan xxxvii balde knyghtis & hardy of Macedoyne nakned þan,
 and tuke ilkan of þan a swerde in his hande & went in-to þe
 water & swame it to þay were passede þe ferthe parte þare-offe.

16 And sodeynly thare rase oute of þe water a grete multitude
 of bestez, þat ere called ypotaynes, grettere of body than and
 olyphant, and deuored thir knyghtis euer-ilkanne. And þan
 was Alexander rihte sare greuede, and be-lyfe garte take þe

20 forsaid guydez el & caste þan in-to þe water. And onane
 þe ypotaynes deuored þam.

And Alexander thoghte it was nozte spedfull langare to stryffe
 wit thase monstres, and garte tromppe vp and remowed his

24 Oste fra þeine, and went so all þat day wondere very for thriste.
 And also þay hadd grete disese & nuye of wilde ² Beste þat come
 apouð þan, þat es to say, of lyones, beres, vnycornes, tygres,
 and pardez, wit þe whilke þay faughte & grete traueff hade.

28 ³ And as þay went ouð þis wyse wit grete angere & disese
 aboute þe elleued houre þay saw a littill bate in þe riuere made
 of rede and meñ rowande þare-in. And Alexander gert spirre
 þan in þe langage of Inde, whare þay myzte fynde any fresche

32 water. And þay talde whare & schewed þan a place a littill
 þeine whare-in þay saide þay scholde fynde a grete staunke of
 swete water and gude. And þan Alexander & hys Oste went
 all aboute þat ryuere, & come till þis forsaid stanke and lused

36 þan aboute it. And Alexander comanded þat þay sulde felle

In what
 fearful
 ways his
 knights try
 to quench
 their
 thirst.
 Going
 along the
 banks they
 come to a
 little isle
 with a
 castle,

* Leaf 28.

wherein are
 men who
 will give
 them no
 answer.
 Alexander
 bids
 certain of
 his knights
 swim the
 stream.
 They swim
 the river,
 but are de-
 uoured by
 hippo-
 tami.

Alexander
 throws the
 guides into
 the river
 and they
 are de-
 uoured
 also.

They travel
 onwards
 greatly
 worried by
 wild beasts.
 At the
 eleventh
 hour they
 meet a
 small boat
 whose crew
 direct them
 to a great
 pond of
 freshwater.
 They camp
 round the

¹ Four lines with miniature *A* and small *a* written in MS. margin beside.

² of deleted by the scribe before *Beste*.

³ Four lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the MS. margin beside.

pond. Alexander bids that they fell a great wood of huge reeds that grow around it.

When the moon rises a great crowd of scorpions come down to drink.

And there come snakes also and many-hued dragons.

These have crested heads with

* Leaf 28 bk.

golden breasts and open mouths.

Their breath slew any quick thing it smote upon and out of their eyes came fiery flames.

Alexander comforts his frightened knights.

Alexander shows how to fight them with nets, and slays many of them.

How many men of Alexander fell thereby.

The wondrous crabs that then attack them.

Then come white Lions

a wood þat growed faste þare-by three myle on lenth, & affs mekil on brede. Þat wodde was aff of þe redez þat I spak of bi-fore, and þe stanke was a myle oñ lenth. Það Alexander comanded þat þay sulde make many fires in þe Oste, and gerte 4 trompe to þe mete. And alsoñ þe mone be-gað to schynne þare come a grete multitude of scorpyons to-warde þe stanke for to take það a drynke. And það þare come oper manere of nedders, and dragones wonder grete of dyuerse colours. 8 And aff þat cuntree resounded of þe noyse & þe hissingez þat þay made. Þir dragones come downne fra þe hye mountaynes for to drynke of þe stanke, and þay hadd crestis one þaire heddez & þaire breste; ware bryghte lyk golde, & þaire 12 mowthes open. Þaire aande slewe any qwikk thyng þat it smate apouñ, and oute of þaire eghne þare come flammes of fyre. And when Alexander & his Oste saw það þay ware riht 16 *fered for það. For þay wende þay schulde hafe weried það ilkañ. And það Alexander comforthed það and saide vn-to það: 'Mi wirchipfull knyghtes,' quop he, 'bees nozte agaste of það, bot does ilkane as 3e see me do.' And það he tuk a nett & sett it bi-twixe hym & það and tuke his schelde & his spere 20 & faughte wit það manfully. And when his knyghtes saw þat þay ware gretly comforthed & be-lyfe tuke þaire wapynnez & didd als þay sawe Alexander doo, and slewe of það a grete multitude, whatt thurgh dyuerse wapynnez, what in þaire fyres. 24 And of Alexander knyghtes þe dragones slewe xxii & xxxii fotemen. After það, þare come owte of þe forsaide wodde of redez, Crabbes of a wonderfull gretteness; and þaire bakkes ware harder það cocadrillez. And when þe knyghtis smate það one 28 þe bakkes wit þaire speres, þay myzte nozte perche það, ne na harme do það. Neuer-þe-lesse þay slewe many of það in þaire Fires and þe remenant of það gatt in-to þe staunke. And aboute þe sexte houre of þe nyghte þare come apouñ það whytt 32 lyones grettere það Bulles, and þay schoke þaire heuede; at það & grete manace made in þaire manere. Það þe knyghtes keped það in þaire nettis and slew þam. After this þare com apouñ það það a grete multitude of swynne þat ware aff of a 36 wonderfull mekilness, wit tuskes of a cubett lenth. And wit það þare come wilde men & women of þe whilke ilkañ hadd sex hende. Bot Alexander & his knyghtes keped það in þaire

- nettis & slewe many of þanð. And on þis wyse Alexander & his
 Oste was gretly disesed. Þanð comandē Alexander þat þay
 schuld' make many fyres wit-owtteñ þe Oste aboute þe stanke.
 4 After this þare come apouñ þanð a wondere grete beste, grettere
 & strangere þanð añ Olyphaunt, and he hadde in his frunte
 three lange hornes. And he was schapeñ lyke a horse & he
 was añ blakke. And þis beste was called in þe langage of Inde
 8 'Anddontrucion'. And or he went to þe water at drynke, he
 assailed þe Oste. Bot Alexander went here & þare amangeþ þe
 oste & comforthed þanð. This ilke beste slewe of his knyghtes
 xxviiij and bare donne lij and at þe laste it felle in þe nettis and
 12 was slayne. After þis þare come oute of þe redeþ a grete multi-
 tude of mysþ als grete als foxes, and ete up þe dede bodys. Þare
 was na qwike thynges, þat þay bate þat ne also soñ it dyed.
 Bot harme did þay nane *to þe oste. Þanð come þare flyande
 16 amangeþ þanð bakkes, grettere þanð wilde dowfes, and þaire
 tethe ware lyke meñ-tethe. And þay didd' meñ mekill disese
 and hurte many meñ. Of sunð þay bate offe þe nese; of sun
 þe eres. In þe mornenyng arely þare come many fewlis als
 20 grete as wlturs, reed' of colour, and þaire fete & þaire bekes
 añ blakke. Bot þay didd' na disese to þe oste, bot went to
 þe stanke-syde & drewe fisches & eleþ oute of þe water, &
 ete þanð.
- 24 ¹ Þhanð lefte Alexander þir ierilous placeþ, and come wit his
 Oste, in-to þe cuntree of Bactriceñ, þe whilke was full of
 golde & oper riches. And þe meñ of þe cuntree resayfed hym
 benyngly & wirechipfully and gaffe hym and his Oste grete giftes.
 28 And þare he habade xx^{ti} dayes. In þat cuntree þay sawe
 trees þat, in-stedde of leues, bare wolfe; þe whilke folkeþ of
 þe cuntree gaderd' & made elathe þare-offe. Þe knyghtes of
 Alexander wex wonder balde & strange of hert because of
 32 þe victoryes þay hadd' wonneñ of þe wilde besteþ before
 neuenned.
- ² Fra thethyn, Alexander remowed his Oste and come to þe
 place whare Porus lay wit þe folke þat he hadd' assembled.
 36 And one þe morne bathe Alexander and Porus tuke þaire
 grounde & arayed þaire batellis for to feghte. And thañ

¹ Four lines with red ornate capital p,
 but small t scribbled in the margin beside.

² Four lines space with red capital S and
 small s written in the margin beside.

greater
 than bulls.
 Then
 follow huge
 swine with
 great tusks.

And with
 them six-
 handed
 men and
 women.

They make
 great fires
 around the
 pond. Then
 comes a
 horselike
 beast

greater
 than an
 elephant.
 Alexander
 again

* Leaf 29.

rallies
 his men.
 It slays
 many, but
 is at last
 slain.

Mice as
 big as foxes
 eat up the
 dead
 bodies.

Whatso-
 ever they
 bit at once
 died.

Then come
 bats
 greater
 than wild
 doves.

They
 march into
 Bactria
 where they
 are well re-
 ceived.

The wool-
 bearing
 trees.

The
 knights
 take
 courage be-
 cause of the
 strange
 beasts they

have conquered.
The armies of Porus and Alexander are arrayed against each other.
The Indians fall heavily.
Porus challenges Alexander to single combat.
The kingship of the nations to abide by the outcome.
For Porus being a great man scorned Alexander.

* Leaf 29
bk.

Porus hits Alexander on the head.

Alexander slays Porus by a trick.
The Indians fight on for their dead king.
Alexander chides them for fighting when their leader is dead.

Alexander bespeaks them peace and surety.
They are right glad and wor-

Alexander lepped apoūn his horse Buktiphalas and went bifore his Oste & þān þay trumpede up & þe bateffs joyned samēn, & faghte to-gedir riȝte sare. Bot þe Indienes felt thikfalde in þe bateff as corne dose in þe felde be-fore þe sythe. 4
 1 And when̄ Porus saw that, he went and stode bi-fore all his mēn, and cryed vn-till Alexander, & saide on this wyse: 'It sittez noȝte till an emperour,' quop he, 'to lose his mēn þus in vayne. Bot it sittez till hym for to determyne his 8 cause with his awen̄d handez. And þarefore late thi folke stand still on þe ta syde, & mȳn on þe toþer & late the & me feghte to gedir hand for hand. And if it happed̄ þat þou ouer-come me, my folke & I saff be subiectez vn-to þe. And 12 if I ouer come the, thān thou & thi folkez be subiectez vn-to me.' Thir wordez said Porus dispysand̄ Alexander, bi-cause þat he was a mān of littill stature. For he was bot three cubites hye, & Porus was fyfe cubetes hye & mare. And þare- 16 fore he traysted̄ hym all in strenghe of his body, noȝte knawande þe vertu & þe hardnes þat was hidd̄ in Alexander.

*And than bathe þe ostes stode still ant lete þe twa kyungeȝ feghte samēn, Porus gaffe Alexander a grete str[a]ke 20 oūn þe hede, & was in poynte to hafe felled̄ hym̄. And then̄ Porus knyghtes sett vp a grete Schowte. And Porus tourned̄ hym to þān-warde for to reprove þān for þaire schowtting. And Alexander went till hym manfully & tuke his swerd̄ in 24 bathe his handez & lete flye at hym & hitt hym fullbott one þe hened̄ & slew hym. And when̄ þe Indienes saw that þay bi-gan scharply for to fighte wit Alexander & his oste. Vn-to whayme Alexander spake & sayde: 'Wrechis,' quop he, 28 'wharto feghte ȝe sēn ȝour kyunge es dede. Wate ȝe noȝte wele that thare na gouernour es þe folke are sparpled̄ be-lyfe als schepe þat ere wit-owtten̄ ane hirde.' Þe Indienes ansuerd̄ & saide: 'Vs es leuer,' quop þay, 'fighte manfully, and dye in the 32 felde, þān for to see þe dissolaciōn of oure folke, and oure lande be destroyed & wasted.' 'Leues ȝour feghtynge,' quop Alexander, ' & wendeȝ hame to ȝour howsez pesaybly & seurely. For I swere ȝow bi oure goddez, if ȝee will do so, ȝe saff hafe no harme, ne 36 ȝour lande saff noȝte be destroyed ne spoyled, bicause þat ȝe hafe foghten so manfully for ȝour kyunge.' And when̄ þe Indienes

¹ Robert Louson is scribbled here in the right-hand margin.

herde thir wordes þay keste fra þaṁ þaire wapynez & thanked Alexander and wirchipeḏ him riȝte als he hadḏ beue a godḏ. Than kyng Alexander lugeḏ hym þare & his Oste wit hym, & he commandḏ to bery þe dede corseȝ þat waro slayne in þe Batell, and offredḏ sacrafice till his goddeȝ. Also he garte Entere Porus þe kyng of Inde wirchipfully.

¹Fra thethyḁ Alexander remowed his Oste & come till a cuntree þat was called Oxidracas. The folkes of þat cuntree are wonder Symple meṁ, and noȝte prowde, & þay are called Gymnosophiste. Þay feghte neuer mare ne stryfes. Þay ga alway nakedḏ, & citeȝ ne townnez hafe þay nane, Bot duelleȝ in lugeȝ & in caues. Wheṁ þe kyng of þis folke herdḏ tell of þe commyng of Alexander he wrate a *lettre*, & sent vn-till hym whare-offe this was the tenour.

^{2*} 'The corruptible Gymnosophist vn-till Alexander a maṁ wee wryte. We here tell þat þou commez to werre apouḁ vs, whare of we merueylle vs gretly. For wit vs saṁ þou fynd nathing þat þou may spoyle vs offe. For we hafe na thyng elles amangeȝ vs, bot allanly whare with we may sustene oure wafull bodyȝ. What may þou þaṁ take fra vs. Bot if þou come for to feght wit vs, feghte oḁ. For I late the wele witt, þat oure symplenes will we on na wyse lefe.' Wheṁ Alexander had reddḏ this *lettre* he sent ane ansuerde agayne oḁ this wyse. 'Paisably,' ^{quop} he, 'will we comḁ to ȝow and no violence do ȝow.' And þaṁ he wente in-to þe cuntree whare þay duelledḏ. And he saw þaṁ ga nakedḏ & duelle in luges & in caues, & þaire wyfes & þaire childre away fra þaṁ, walkandḏ wit wilde bestez. And he hadḏ grete marueylle, & asked þaṁ if þay hadḏ any oȝer howseȝ. And þay ansuerde & saidḏ, 'Nay. Bot in thir holetteȝ duelle we alwaye & in þir caues.' And Alexander commendidḏ gretely þaire symplenesse, and bad þaṁ aske hym whate-so þay walde. And þay ansuerdḏ & sayde, 'Gyffe vs,' ^{quop} þay, 'vndedlynesse, so þat we mow noȝte dye; for oȝer reches couet we nane.' ^{Quop} Alexander, 'I am dedely my selfe, how þaṁ may I giffe ȝou vndedlyness?' And wheṁ þay herdḏ hym say soo þaṁ þay ansuerdḏ & sayde oḁ this wyse. 'A, A, wrechedḏ maṁ,' ^{quop} þay, 'whare to wendeȝ þou þus

ship Alexander as a god.
King Alexander offers sacrifice and buries Porus worshipfully.
King Alexander comes to the Gymnosophists, a strange people.

* Leaf 30.

The letter of their king to Alexander, telling him he has naught to win of them.

Alexander commends them and comes peaceably to them. He sees them leading the life of nature.

He admires their ways greatly and offers them a boon. They ask for deathlessness. They chide him for his ambition when they

¹ Five lines with red capital *F* and small *f* written in the margin beside.

² Four lines with red capital *T*.

hear he
also must
die.
He says he
is driven
on to con-
quer by the
might of
God, which
will not
allow him
to rest. He
goes
thence.

He comes
to the
pillars of
Hercules,
which are
statues,
* Leaf 30
bk.

one of gold
and one of
silver.

He finds
them
hollow and
puts money
therein.

He
marches
thence into
a cold and
mirky wil-
derness.

They come
to a great
river, on the
other side
of which
are fair
women

fouly clad,
who bear
weapons of
silver since
other metal
have they
none.
There were
no men
amongst
them.

aboute, & quellez so many men, & soo many ilke dediz dooes
sen þou wate wele þat þou sall dye.' 'For sothe,' quoth he, 'þe
cause whi I do it es of þe prouydence of godd. For hys
mynystre I aȳ, doand þe cōmmandement of hym. 3ee wate 4
wele þat þe see es noȝte trubbled of hym selfe. Bot whēd þe
wynde entres in-till hym, þaȳd it stirrez hym & troublez hym.
I walde hafe risteld and leste aȳ werre. Bot þare es anoþer
spyryte & suffres it noȝte be in reste.' And whēd Alexander 8
hadde said thir wordez he leste þaȳd & went till anoþer
cuntree.

¹ Anoþer day, he come wit his Oste till a place wharee twa
ymagez ware, þe whilke Ercules gart make & sett in þat place. 12
And þe tane of þaȳd was of fyne golde and þe toper of fyne
Siluere, & the lenthe of aythir of þaȳd was twa cubettis.
Whēd Alexander saw þir ymagez, * he gert perche² þaȳd for
to witt, wheþer þay ware holle or massy. And he fand 16
þat þay were a party holle. And he garte stoppe þe hole
agayne and putt in þaȳd a thowsande nobles, & fyve hundreth.
And fra þeine he remowed his Oste, and entrede in-till
a wildirnesse calde & myrk, so þat þay myghte vnnethes aȳ 20
knaue anoþer or see anoþer. And fra thythiȳd þay went seued
daye iournee and entred in-till a wildirnesse, and come till
a grete reuere. And bi-ȝonde þat riuere þay saw wonder faire
& wele vesaged women cledd in foule clethyng & horrible; and 24
þay hadd in þaire handez wapne made aȳ of siluere, bicause
þay hadd noþer Ireȳd ne stele. And þay rade one horse. And
men saw þay nane amangez þaȳd. And whēd þe Oste walde
hafe passede ouer this ryuere, þay myȝte noȝte be cause it was 28
riȝte brade and full of dragones and oþer monstres.

³ Fra thethin þay went aboute towardez þe leste party of⁴
Inde and come till a dry Marras full of gret redez. And as
þay passed thurgh þat Marras, be-lyue þare come owte of þe 32
redeȝ a beste lyke ane ypotayne, whase breste was lyke to þe
cocadriȳte, and his bakke lyk a sawe, and his tethe wonder
grete, & als scharpe as a suerde; bot in his gangyng he was

perche.

³ Four lines with red capital *F* and
small *f* written in the margin beside.

⁴ MS. of twice.

¹ Three lines with red capital *A* and
small *a* in the margin beside.

² Bottom of leaf 30 right-hand side reads
as above gert *perche*; top of leaf 30 turn-
ing over to the left-hand side reads *garte*

als slaw als a snyle. And, in his oute-come, he slew twa knyghtis of Alexander. This ilke beste myzte þay on na wyse perche wit þaire speres. Bot wit mellis of yreñ þay slew it.

They come to a dry morass and meet a terrible beast.

They come to the uttermost isles of India.

There come a great multitude of elephants against them. But Alexander overcomes them by a trick.

4 ¹ And fra þeine þay trauelde thritty day iournez and come to þe vittermaste iles of Inde, & þare þay lugeð þam beside; a ryuere þat es callede in þat langage of Inde Hemmahurer. And aboute þe Eleuend houre þar come owte of þe woddez a grete
8 multitude of Olyphante; & come apouñ þam wit a gret birre & þaire groynes opyñ. And onane Alexander lepe apouñ his horse Buktiphalas and busked hym agaynes þam and badd þe macedoynes þat þay solde tak þaire horse and ilk a mañ a swyne in
12 a bande, & wende agaynes þe olyphantis. And when þe oliphantes saw þam, þay come gapande wit þaire groyne; redy te tak þam. And when þe Macedoynes saw þat þay ware fered and durste nozte go to þam. And Alexander saide vn-to þam,
16 'My wirchipfull knyghtes,' quop he, 'bese of gud comforth and dredez 3ow na-tynge. For, and 3e will gare 3oure swyne crye faste * 3e schall see all þir Olyphantes flee anoñ.' And alsone als þe Olyphantes herde þe crye of þe swyne, and þe
20 noyse of þaire trompes, þay fledd' and durste nozte habyde. And Alexander & his meñ pursued tham, and what wit nettis, whatt wit swerdes & speres, þay slewe of þam a grete multitude, and come agayne to thaire tentis.

He bids his men take swine against

Leaf 31.

them and makes the swine squeal.

24 ² Anoper day þay removed þeine, and trauelde thurgh the same woddez of ³ Inde. And þay fande þare women with berdiss rechaunde down to þaire pappes, & þaire heuede; playne abowne, and þay ware cledd' all in skyunes. Þay chasede thir
28 women and sum of þam þay tuke & broghte þam till Alexander. And he gart spirre þam in the langage of Inde, how þay liffed in thase woddes, whare na duellyng was of meñ. And þay answered & said, 'We lyffe all,' quop þay, 'wit venyson þat we
32 take in thir woddes thurgh huntynge.'

They march thence through the forests of India and come upon wild women with long beards.

And they find also other tribes of wild men

¹ Four lines with red capital *A* and small *a* beside it in margin.

² Four lines with capital *A* in red, and small *a* beside.

³ *Inde* altered into *Inde*.

⁴ Four lines with red capital *W* and small *w* written in the margin beside.

and
women.

They go
thence fif-
teen days
till they
meet the
Cynoce-
phali
whom they
overcome.

They
march
forty days
to a barren
land with
no hills,
and a
terrible
east
wind blows
over it and
causes fires
and disease
throughout
the camp.
They fear
it is be-
cause of
Alex-

* Leaf 31
bk.

ander's
ambition.
He tells
them it is
because
of the
Equinox.
Then they
go thence
twenty-five
days to a
green
valley
where is
fearful
cold. They
light fires
against the
snow-
storms.
Rain comes
and the
snow stops,
but five

als rughe of hare as þay hade bene bestes. Whase kynde & custom it was als wele to be in þe water, als oñ þe lande. And als sone als þay saw Alexander Oste onane þay fledd to þe water, and dowked in-till it. Fra þeine þay traueled xv day iournee, 4 and entred in-till woddes þat ware full of cynocephals, þe whilke als soñ als þay saw Alexander & his oste onane þay assailede þam. Bot Alexander & his men, what wit arowes whate wit speres & nettes slew a grete multitude of þam, and 8 þe remenaunt of þam fledd here and thare in þe woddeȝ.

¹ Fra thethyñ þay went forty dayes & come in-till a cham- payne cuntree, þat was all Barayne, and na hye place ne na hilles myghte be sene on na syde. And as it ware aboute þe xj 12 houre of þe day, þare bigað so grete a wynde to blawe oute of þe Este þat it blew doune to þe eithe all thaire teutis & paire luges. And þare was grete disese ymang þe oste. For þe wynde tuk fire-brandes oute of fyres þat þay hadd made, and 16 smate dyuerse men & brynte þam. And þam Alexander knyghtes mournurede gretly & said amangeȝ þam, 'þe wrethe & þe wreke of oure goddeȝ,' quop þay, 'falleȝ apoñ vs, Bicause we seke to ferre towarde þe soñ rysynge.' 'My wirchipfull 20 knyghteȝ,' quop Alexander, 'bese * of gud ccmforthe and no thyng ferde for this tempeste es noȝtee falled thurgh wrethe of oure goddes bot be-cause of equinox of heruest.' Whed þe wynde was cessed þay gadirde to-gedir þat þe wynd hadd 24 sparled.

² Fra þeine þay went xxv days and come in-till a grene valay, and þare þay lused þam. Than commanded Alexander þat þay schuld make many fyres. For it begað for to be vn- 28 sufferable calde. And thare be-gan for to falle grete flawghtis of snawe, as þay had bene grete lokkes of woffe. Whed Alex- ander saw that, he was ferde þat it schuld noȝte haf cessed sone, and bad his men þat þay suld tred douñ þe snawe & full 32 it wit paire fete. And paire fyres also helpe þam gretly. Neuer- þe-lesse þare ware fyve hundrethe of þe Oste dedd thurgh þat snawe, þe whilk Alexander gart bery. Þam þare felle a pass- and grete rayne, and þe snaw cessed. Wit þe rayne, also, þare 36 come so thikke a myste, þat contenually three days to gedir þay

¹ Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* in margin beside.

² Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* in the margin beside.

saw na souid. And oute of þe clude þat hange abowid þauid þer
 fell as it hadd bene grete fyrebrandez þe whilk brynt many of
 thaire tenttis and of þaire luges. And onane Alexander offred
 4 sacrifice till his goddez and bad his knyghtis put alde ryuen
 elathez wate bi-fore þe fire, and he made his prayere. And also
 souid the whedir wexe clere & faire.

¹ Fra thethin, þay removed and come till a grete ryuere þat
 8 es called Ganges & þare þay lused þauid. And as þay lused
 ouer on the toper syde, þay saw twa or thre meid walke up &
 downid þare. And Alexander badd his meid spirre þauid in þe
 langage of Inde what þey ware. And þay answered & said.
 12 'We are Bragmayns,' quop þay. Alexander hadd grete desyre
 to speke wit þe Bragmayns. Bot he myzte nozte wynid ouer
 þe water; it was so depe & so brade Bot if it had bene in þe
 monethe of July and Auguste. And also it was full of ypotaynes
 16 & scorpyones and cocadrilles, out takenid in þe forsaid monethes.
 And whend he saw þat he myghte on na wyse wynid ouer he was
 rezte heuy. And belyfe he garte make a lyttill bate of redis, &
 couerde it wit nowtte hydiz & gerte pykk it wele bathe wit-in &
 20 wit-owttenid. And whend þe bate was made, he gert a knyght of
 his gang in-to it, and gaffe hym a lettre wit hym for to bere
 * to Dindimus, þat was kyng of þe Bragmayns, of whilk lettre þis
 was þe tenour.

24 ² 'Kyng of kynges and lorde of lordez, Alexander þe souid of
 godd Amouid & of þe quene Olympias, vn-to Dindimus kyng
 of Bragmayns, ioy. Euer seid we were comeid to þat age þat
 we couthe discerne by-twix gud & ill we hafe desyred soueraynly
 28 for to hafe wysdomme & konnyng, & for to putt away fra
 vs ignorance & vnconnyng. For as þe wise techyng of oure
 philosophires declares opynly, Eloquence wit owttenid witt & wis-
 32 domid dose ofte-sythles mare skathe þauid gude. Þarefore we hafe
 wele vnderstandenid by relacioid of dyuerse meid, þat 3our lyfe &
 3our maners are diuised and diuerse fra all oþer meid; so þat
 noþer oid þe See ne on þe lande 3e seke na helpe and þat 3e
 36 seme anoþer manere of doctryne þauid we hafe lerende of oure
 doctours. Whare-fore we pray 3ow þat 3e wifl certyfyte vs bi
 3our lettres of 3our lyffe and 3our maners and 3our doctryne. For

hundred have died. Then comes a great mist with the rain, out of which fall firebrands. Alexander offers sacrifice to his gods and the weather becomes clear. They come to the Ganges, on the other side of which are the Brahmins. They cannot cross because of the dangerous beasts. He sends a knight over in a boat with a

*Leaf 32.
 letter to Dindimus, king of the Brahmins. Alexander's letter to Dindimus, asking the Brahmins the reason for their strange manners, since he fain would learn wisdom of them.

¹ Four lines with capital *F* and small *f* written in the margin beside.

² Four lines with capital *K* in red, and small *k* in the margin beside.

Since by giving another man goodness one loses no goodness oneself. He makes a comparison.

Dindimus' letter to Alexander.

Wisdom may be bought with no price.

* Leaf 32 bk.

He commends wisdom in Alexander as an Emperor. Their ways are other than those of the Greeks. The Greeks shall have no profit because of their warlikeness.

The Brahmins lead a simple life and eschew the worship of many gods. They do not till nor fish. They trust

peraventure we may take *pare* of sum gud Ensamble, and *3our* wysdome & *3our* gudnesse neuer be *pe* lesse. For it es na harme till a mañ thurgh his gudnes to make ano*per* mañ gude as he es. The whilk I may proue bi this simylitūd—I supposse a mañ hadd 4 in his hand a lyght candill, many o*per* candills may be lyghted *pare* at, & it lose na-thinge of his lyghte. And rizte so it es of *pe* gudnesse of a mañ. For many meñ may take gude ensamble of *hym* & his gudnesse be na thinge enmenuste *pare*by. Where- 8 fore 3itt eft-sons we pray 3ow *pat* wit-owtten any taryinge or delay, 3e schowe vs *pe* maners of *3our* lyffing.' Than kyng Dindimus resaffed *pis* *lettre* wirchipfully and wrate ano*per* agayne of this tenour. 12

¹ Dyndimus maister of *pe* Bragmayns vn-to kyng Alexander ioy & gretynge. We hafe welc vnderstanden by *pe* tenour of thi *lettres*, *pat* *pou* desyres gretly for to hafe *verray* connyng and *perfitt* wysdom; *pe* whilke are mekil better *pañ* any 16 kyngdom; for *pay* may neuer be boghte wit na pryce, wharefore I comend *pe* gretly, knawing *pat* *pou* arte a wyse mañ. For ane Emperour wit-owtten * wisdom, es noghte lorde of his subiectis, Bot his sugettis ere lordes of *hym*. 3e wrate 20 vntill vs, praying vs for to schewe 3owe oure maners of lyffynge, ilke a poynte *etter* o*per*, *pe* whilke we halde impossible for to doo. For oure *maner* of lyffynge es full ferre dyuerse fra 3ours. For no*per* we wirchipe *pe* goddes *pat* 3e wirchipe, 24 ne ledis *pe* lyfe *pat* 3e lede. And if I writte 3owe oughte of oure *maner* of lyffing, 3e may hafe na sauoure *pare* in, be-cause 3e are besily occupied wit dedis of armes. Neuer-*pe*-lesse *pat* 3e say no3te *pat* I layne oure lyfe fra 3ow for envy, Als 28 mekil as come3 to my mynde at *pis* tyme I sañ writt vnto 3ow of oure maners.

² We Bragmayns lede3 a symple lyfe & a clene and *pe* wirchipyng of many goddes we eschu. We do na synnes ne 32 we wil hafe na mare *pañ* resoñ of kynde ashes. All thynges we suffer & *pat*, say we, es necessary & ynoghe, *pat* es no3te ouermekil. We tisse na laude, ne eryes, ne sawes, ne 3okes no*per* ox ne horse in plughe ne in carte. Ne nett caste we nane in *pe* 36 see, for to take fysche; Ne hunttynge ne fewlynge vse we

¹ Four lines with capital *D* in red, and small *d* in margin beside.

² Three lines with red capital *W*, and small *w* in margin.

nane. Mete & drynke hafe we ynoghe, and oþer mete seke we
 nane, bot þat þe erthe oure allere moder wīt-owtten̄ mannes
 labour brynges furthe. Wīt swilke metis we fiſt oure wambes,
 4 whilke nuȝes vs noȝte, ne na harme doſe. And ȝit of swilke
 metis we fiſt noȝte oure bodis to full. For amangeȝ vs it es an
 vn-ſemely thyng & an vn-leeful̄ to ſee a grete-belyed̄ mañ.
 And þare-for ere we aſt oure lyfe tyñd wīt-owtten̄ ſekeneſſe
 8 & lyffeȝ lang & alwaye are in gude hele tiſt oure lyffes ende.
 We vſe neuer-mare na medcyns ne ſekes na helpe for þe hele of
 oure bodys. At a terme of deede endes oure lyfes, for ane of vs
 leues na langere þañ añ-oþer, Bot eſter þe order of þe birthe of
 12 mañ, þe terme of deede comes tiſt ilke a mañ. There comeȝ
 nane of vs at na fire for na calde, ne elatheȝ comeȝ þare nane
 apon̄ vs, Bot alway we ga naked. We fulfiſt neuer þe deſyres
 of oure bodys. Thurgh pacyence we ſuffree aſt thyngȝ. Aſt
 16 oure inwarde enemys we ſlaa, So þat we drede nane enemys
 wīt-owtten̄. For lightlyer es a citee or a caſtelle taken̄ þat es
 enſegged̄ bathe wīt inwarde enemys & wīt-owtten̄, þañ þat þat
 es enſegged̄ allanly wīt owtwarde enemys. Bot þou, emperour,
 20 feghtes agaynes owtwardeȝ enemys for [to] foſter & nuresche thyñd
 inwardeȝ enemys, þe whilke ere fendes of heſte. We Bragmayns
 has ſlayne aſt oure inwardeȝ enemys and þarefore we drede nane
 owtwarde enemys ne nane helpe ſekes for to hafe agayneȝ þañ*
 24 noþer be ſee ne be land. Bot we ere always ſewre ynoghe,
 and lyffeȝ wīt-owtten̄ any drede. Oure bodys we liſt wīt
 þe leues of trees and þe fruyte of þañ we ete. We ete mylke
 also and drynkes water of a gude ryuere or of ſwete welles.
 28 We wirchippe a godd̄, and tiſt hym always we ȝelde lonyngȝ.
 We deſire þe life of þe werlde þat es to come, and vs liſte noȝte
 here þe þyng þat turneȝ to na profett. We ſpekke noȝte
 mekiſt, Bot wheñ we ere artede for to ſpeke we ſay noȝte bot
 32 þe ſothe, and onane we halde vs ſtiſt. Reches luſte we noȝte.
 Couetiſe es a thyng þat may noȝte be filled, þe whilke oſte-
 ſytheȝ bryngȝ a mañ tiſt a meſcheuous ende. Wrethe ne
 envie es þare nane amangeȝ vs, ne nane of vs es ſtrangere þañ
 36 anoþer. Of the pouert þat we hafe we ere riche, for we hafe it
 in comon. We ſtrife neuer mare, ne beres neuer wapeñ. We
 bere peeſſe ilkañ tiſt oþer of cuſtom̄, noȝte thurgh vertu.
 Domes hafe we nane amanges vs, for we do nane iſt, whare-fore

to mother
 earth.
 They use
 such meats
 as do them
 no harm,
 nor do they
 eat too
 much, and
 there are
 no great-
 bellied men
 amongst
 them. They
 have no
 sickness
 nor medi-
 cines. They
 live the
 fixed term
 of life.
 They have
 no fire for
 cold. They
 conquer
 themselves.
 Alexander
 conquers
 others and
 is con-
 quered by
 his inner
 enemies.
 Therefore
 do the
 Brahmins
 * Leaf 33.
 dread no
 foes. They
 are clad in
 leaves and
 drink
 water.
 They wor-
 ship one
 god and
 desire eter-
 nal life.
 They love
 not long
 ſpeech nor
 covetous-
 neſſe.
 They are
 all of equal
 might and
 riches, and
 bear no
 weapons.
 Neither
 have they
 dooms, for
 they do no
 ill.

Neither need they mercy. They have no avarice, adultery, or lechery, and have therefore no penance or sudden death.

They are arrayed in no bright clothes.

They always keep to the same trades.

They use no baths.

They will make no other man serve them.

They have no houses nor vessels, but live in caves and crags. They sleep on the earth.

* Leaf 33 bk.

Their houses become their graves.

They sail not the seas for trade.

They seek no eloquence but rather simplicity of speech. They have no philosophers, for such are liars and of unsteady speech.

But in their schools they learn wisdom and righteousness.

They love not plays.

we schulde be called vn-to dome. A law *pare* es þat es contrary til oure kynde. For we do na mercy, bi-cause we do no thyng whare-fore we sulde aske mercy. We do na labour þat *pertenez* to couetise or auarice. We giffe noȝte oure bodyse to lechorye, 4 we do nane adrowtrye, ne we do na synn whare-fore vs sulde nede to do penance. We fynde na fawte in na thyng, For we aȝ does that þat righte es. We dye na sodeyne dede, For thurgh foule dedis we corupte noȝte þe ayere. We vse na 8 clathes þat are littede of dyuerse coloures. Oure wiffes ne are noȝte gayly arayed for to plese vs. Ne wit þaȝd we comon noȝte bi-cause of luste of lecherye, bot bi-cause of childre getyng. Our wyffes sekis na noȝer clethyng, þaȝd þe forlute of godd 12 hase granted þaȝd. And whaa dare take apoȝd hym for to chaunge his wirkyng, an heghe synn vs thynke it ware till any maȝd for to presume to do it. Baththis vse we nane, ne warme water to wasche oure bodys wit aȝ. Þe Soȝd mynistres vs hete, 16 and þe dewe of þe ayer ministres vs moyster & wete. We hafe na thoghte of na thyng, ne we schewe na lordechipe abownd oȝer meȝd þat ere lyke vn-till us. For a grete crueltee we halde it to constreyne a maȝd to serue vs, whayme kynde & 20 þe forlute of godd hase made oure broȝer als fre als we are. We brynne na stanes for to make lyme off and *pare-wit* to make vs howses at dueȝte in, and curiouse palases; ne vesselȝ make we nane. In caues or creuyces of craggis we duelle, whare thare 24 comeȝ na noyse of wyndes * ne whare vs thare drede na rayne. On þe erthe we slepe wit-owtten any besynesse. Swilk howses we hafe; in þe whilke, whils we lyffe, we dueȝte, and whend we dye, þay ere oure graues. We sayle noȝte in 28 þe see aboute na merchandyse, in þe whilke þay suffre many perills þat sayles *parein* & many *meruaylles* canȝ tell offe. The crafte of Eloquence & faire speche, lere we noȝte for to polische oure wordes; Bot thurgh þe sympilnesse þat we hafe 32 þat suffres vs noȝte to lye, aȝ oure speche we speke. Scoles of philosophres haunt wee noȝte, whase techehynges es alway discordand & na thyng certayne, ne stabill diffines, bot for þe mare partye lyes. Bot þa scoles we haunte in þe 36 whilke we lere to lyffe vertuosly and also thynges þat teches vs for to do no wrange to no maȝd. Bot after verray right-wisnesse to helpe ilk maȝd at oure powere. Plays lufe we nane.

Bot if vs liste hafe any disporte we take & rede; þe lyfes
 & þe dedis of oure Auncestres, and oure predicessours. And
 if we fynde any thyng in þam þat es cause of laughtre
 4 þar-at we wepe & makes dole. Neuer-þe-lesse we behalde
 oper thynges of þe whilke oure hertis ere gladdide and grete
 lykyng has, þat es at say, heuen-schyne wit sternes wit-owt
 nowmer; þe soñ faire & bryghte, of whase bryghtnesse all
 8 þe werlde takes lyghte and hete. The see we se alwaye
 of purpoure coloure, and when tempeste; ryse; þare-in it dis-
 truyes nozte þe land þat es nere it, as it does in 3oure
 partes. Bot he embrace; it as his sister and gase aboute it.
 12 And in þe se we see many dyuerse kynde; of Fisches,
 Delphines & porpase; layke þam. We hafe lykyng also for
 to bihalde faire felde; alouer floresched wit flores of þe whilke
 a swete reffaire enters in-till oure nose; in þe whilke
 16 a sensible saule hase maste delite. Also we delit vs in faire
 place; of wodde; & of swete welles whare we here swete
 sange; of fewles. This customs hafe we al-way, þe whilke, &
 þou walde halde nozte bot a while, we trowe þou suld thynke
 20 þam rihte hard. Blame nozte me, for all þat þou requerede
 me be þi lettres I send þe wretyn. Neuer-þe-less, and it
 sulde nozt displese the, I walde tell þe a littill of oure
 doctryne þe whilke makes oure lyfe to seme harde vn-to þe.
 24 3ee hafe wit-in a schorte while conquered & made sugete
 vn-to 3our empire all Asy, Europe, & Affryke. As 3our selfe
 hase¹ sayde * 3e make þe lighte of þe soñ to faile, when 3e
 seke þe termes of his course thurgh werre. 3e ete all manere
 28 of thynges² þat come; till hande, And 3our vesages seme; as
 3e ware fastande & hungry. 3e slaa 3our childe makande
 sacrafice of þam to Mawmetes. 3e sawe discorde bi-twix
 kynges and thase þat schulde be meke 3e stirre for to be
 32 prowde. 3e make men to thynke þat grete space of landes
 sufice; þam nozte And so pay seke duellynge place; of heuen.
 ' Also thurgh 3our goddes 3e do many ill dedis, as þay didd
 þam selfe, Ensample of Iubiter 3our godd & of Proserpyna þat
 36 3e wirchipe as a goddesse. For Iubiter defouled many mens

But they rather read of the lives and deeds of their forefathers and weep if there be any cause for laughter. They are glad in the brightness of nature and its delights. He will tell Alexander a little of their doctrine. Alexander has conquered the world, and made the sun pale. The visages of his men grow thin and hungry. They offer their children to Maumets. Alexander sows
 * Leaf 34. discord between kings and ever desires more ground. The gods of the Greeks do ill deeds and they are fools that serve such. The Greeks fain con-

¹ Scribblings at the bottom of leaf 33 bk. :- 'P.', 'G.' below the P., then 'H. Amen. Do For'.

² Scribe originally wrote *thynkes*, but changed the *k* into a *g*, thus *thynges*.

quer other
men

They change
their laws,
and do but
hold with
fine speech,
loving gold
and silver and
rich things.
The Greeks
live in glut-
tony and fall
sick.

The wisdom of
the Brahmins
surpasses all
that of the
Greeks.

They burn the
bodies of the
dead and do
not give back
to earth what
earth has
given forth.

The Brah-
mins slay no
beasts in the
worship of
God, neither
do they have
gold nor
silver nor
precious
things in His
service, since
for none of
these things
does God hear
man, but only
for his good
works.

Prayer is the
word and the
word is God.
Therefore are
the Greeks
fools, holding
themselves

* Leaf 34 bk.
heavenly and
thinking they
communicate
with God
whilst they
defile

wyfes, and Proserpyna made many meñ to do advowtry wit hir. Full wreched & full hye fules þay ere, þat swilke goddes wirchipes. 3ee wiñ nozte suffer meñ lyfe in þaire awenid libertee bot makes þañ 3our thralles & 3our sugetes. 3e deme 4 nozte ryztwisly, 3e gerre 3our iugez change 3our lawes as 3ow liste. 3e say many thynges þat sulde be donne, bot 3e do þañ nozte. 3e halde na mañ wysse bot hym þat hase Eloquence of speche. 3e hafe añ 3our witt in 3our tungez, and añ 3our 8 wysdome es in 3our mouthe. 3e lufe golde & siluer & gaders þam to-gedir and desyre3 to hafe grete howsez & hye, and grete multitude of seruandez. 3e ete & drynk to mekiñ, so þat oftymes 3our stomake thurgh grete repleccioñ es greued & many 12 sekenesse þare-thurgh 3e fall in, & so ofte sythes dyes before 3our tyme. 3e wolde euer-mare halde 3our reches and añ thynges þat 3e may gete. Bot añ thynges at þe laste leues 3ow. Þe wysdoñ allanly of þe Bragmayns passe3 añ 3our witt & 16 3our wysdoñ. For, & we wele consedere, þe same moder þat broghte forthe stanes & trees, of þe same was bathe oure bygynnyng & 3ours. 3e honowre 3our Sepultours curyously wit golde & syluer, and in vesselte made of precyouse stanes 3e putt 20 þe asse of 3our bodys, whend þay ere bryuned. And what may be werre þañ for till take þe banes, þat þe erthe sulde hafe, for to ga bryñ þañ, and nozte suffere þe erthe resayffe his element þe whilke he broghte forthe. 24

‘We sla na bestez in þe wirchipe of goddez. Nee temples make we nane, for to sett in ymage3 of golde or of siluere in þe name of false goddez, as 3e do; ne awters of golde and of precious stanes. 3e hafe swilke a lawe for to honoure 3our 28 goddez wit 3our gudes for þat þay sañ here 3our prayers. Bot we vndirstande & wate wele þat noþer for golde ne siluer; ne for þe blode of calues nor gayte ne schepe Godd heres any mañ. Bot for gude werkes þe whilke Godd lufes, and thurgh 32 þe wordes of deuote prayere. Godd wiñ here a mañ for þe worde. For thurgh worde we ere lyke to Godd. For Godd es worde,* and þat worde made añ þe werlde aud thurgh þat worde añ thynges hase beyng, Mouyng & lyfe. That worde wirchipe 36 wee and luffes & honowres. Godd es a spirite. And he lufes na-thing bot þat that es clene. Whare-fore we halde 3ow full grete foles, that wenez 3our kynde be heuenly, and þat 3e hafe

- communicaciō with Godd, And neuer-pe-less files *your* kynde
 wit advowtries & fornicacions & seruyce of Mawmettis & false
 goddis, and many oþer wikkede dedis: ilke a day þis 3e do.
- 4 Þis 3e luffe, and þarefore when 3e ere dede ȝe sañ suffere tour-
 mentis wit-owtteñ nowmer. 3e wene þat Godd will be mercyable
 vn-to 3ow bi-cause þat 3e offre hym blode & flesse of dyuerse
 bestez. Bot we on þe contrarye wyse luffez clenness bathē of
 8 Body & of saule, so þat we mowe hafe after þis lyfe ioy þat
 neuer sañ hafe ende.
- ‘ 3ee serue nozte a Godd þat regnez in heueñ, Bot 3e do seruyce
 to many false goddis. For als so many membrs, als 3e hafe oñ
 12 *your* bodys, als many goddis 3e wirchipe & serues. For 3e caste
 a mañ þe lesse werlde, and riȝte as a mañ here hase many
 lymmes, so 3e say þare are many goddes in heueñ. 3e say Iuno
 es godd of þe hert, bi-cause he was wonder angry; and Mars 3e
 16 say es godd of þe breste, bi-cause he was pryñce of Batellis.
 Mercury 3e caste godd of þe tung, bi-cause he was wonder
 euloquent in spekyng. Hercules 3e trowe be godd of þe armes,
 Bi-cause he did twelfe passande dedes of armes. 3ee trowe
 20 Bacus be godd of þe throtte, for he fande firste drounkynnesse.
 Conetise, 3e say, es godd of þe lyuer, for he was þe firste lechoure
 þat euer was. And 3e say þat he hase in his hande a byrñand
 fyrebrande whare-wit he styrres þe luste of lechery. Cereris
 24 3e caste godd of þe wambe, bi-cause scho was þe firste Fynder
 of wheete. And Venus, be-cause scho was moder of lechery, 3e
 say scho es godd of þe preuee membres of mañ & womañ.
 Mynerva, bi-cause scho was fynder of many werkes, 3e say
 28 wisdomē risteȝ in her, and þare-fore 3e cast hir godd of þe heueñ.
 And oñ þis wyse all þe body of mañ 3e deuyde in goddes,
 & na party þareoffe 3e lefe in *your* aweñd powere. Ne 3e trowe
 nozte that a godd þat es in heueñ made *your* bodys of noghte.
- 32 False goddes 3e wirchipe þat sañ bryñge 3ow to thralledome
 & schame & schenchiþe, and to thayñd 3e make sacrafice &
 tribute payes. Vn-to Mars 3e offere a Bare. To Bacus 3e
 offere a gayte; To Iune a pacoke; To Iubiter a Bulle; To
 36 Appollo * a swane¹; To Venus a doufe; To Mynerva ane
 owle; To Cereris floure; To Mercury hony. And Hercules 3e
 onowreñ wit floures & grene braunches of treesseȝ. Þe temple

their own
 kind with
 foul sins
 and
 idolatry.
 When they
 die they
 shall suffer
 endless
 pain and
 their slain
 beasts avall
 them
 nought.

The Greeks
 serve not
 one God
 but many.
 They have
 every
 human
 member
 a god.

The ac-
 count of all
 the Greek
 gods and
 their evil
 doings.

Thus they
 give all
 their body
 over to
 numberless
 gods, not
 worship-
 ping the
 one Creator,
 but rather
 false gods
 that bring
 them into
 * Leaf 35.
 thraldom.
 The sacri-
 fices

¹ Bottom of leaf 34 swanne, top of leaf 35 swane.

which they offer to their gods. The gods become not their helpers but their tormentors, egging them on to all evils. Yet they must hearken to them.

Righteous punishment for the ill deeds of the Greeks.

The prayers of the Greeks are evil, so that they are harmed whether such be heard or not.

All the torments of hell are in the Greeks through their own vices.

And the bodies of the Greeks are a living hell.

of Couetyse 3e enourne wit roseȝ. Afte *your* myghte & *zoure* triste 3e putt in þam þat may *zow* na-thing helpe at nede. Now sothely 3e pray þaṁd noȝte to be *zour* helpers, Bot *zoure* *tourmentours*. For it byhoues nedis be þat, als many 4 goddes als 3e wircþipe & gyffeȝ þaṁd powere of *zour* lymmes, als many *tourmenteȝ* 3e suffere. Ane of *zour* goddes stirres *zow* to fornycacion. Ane oþer to ete & drynke to mekill, and anoþer to feghte & stryffe. All ere þay *zour* lordes, and to 8 þaṁd 3e obey & serues and wircþippes. So þat wonder it es þat *zour* wrechid^r bodys fayles noȝte for þe many seruyceȝ þat 3e do to so many goddes. And gud riȝte it es þat 3e serue swilke goddes bi-cause of þe many wikkede dedis þat 3e do. 12 And for 3e wilt noȝte cesse of *zour* itt dedis, þarefore 3e serue swilke goddes tift *zour* awenṁd harme, For euermare þay desyre þat 3e do itt. If *zour* goddes here *zow* whenṁ 3e pray to þam, þay do *zow* harme in *zour* conscience. For þat that 3e pray 16 fore es itt. And if þay here *zow* noghte, þaṁd ere þay contrarye to *zour* desyres. Wharefore whethir þay here *zow*, or þay here *zow* noghte, euer-mare þay do *zow* disesse. Þise ere þa¹ *tourmenteȝ* þat oure doctours talde vs offe, þat here in this 20 werlde *tourmenteȝ* *zow* as 3e ware dede. For, and 3e consyder wele, þare may no man suffere wers *tourment* þaṁd 3e doo. For all þe takens þat oure doctours telleȝ vs ere in helle, and we see þaṁd in *zowe*.² Þare are many paynes in helle, 24 3e suffre paynes when 3e wake for to do advowtres, fornycacions, & thiftes, maṁ-slawghters. And namely, þat 3e bee filled^r of werldly reches; 3a, & of worldly rechesse. For oure doctours says, þare es in helle so mekill thriste, þat it may 28 neuer be slokend^r; and 3e haue so grete Couetyse of worldely reches þat 3e may neuer be full. Þay say also þat in helle þare es a hunde þat es callede *Cerberus* þe whilke hase thre heuedes; And if 3ee conseder ryȝte, *zour* wambes are lyke *Cerberus*. 32 For mekill etyng & drynkkyng, þay say also, þare es³ in helle a maner of nedder þat es called^r *Idra*. And 3e for þe many viceȝ, þat 3e hafe bicause of *zour* full wambeȝ may be callede *Idra*. Wharefore & we bi-helde wele all þe illes þat 36

¹ MS. reads *þa*.

² in *zowe* inserted in the right-hand margin by the same scribe.

³ MS. twice over, *þare es*.

are in helle, þay dueffe in 3ow. * Waa es 3ow, wreches, þat swilke a mysbileue haldes; whare-fore after þis lyfe, 3e moñd suffere paynes wit-owtten nowmer.' Whēñ Alexander hadd' redd' þis *lettre*, he was wonder wrathe, be-cause of iniury of his godde3. Neuer-þe-less, be-lyfe he gart write anoþer agayne of this tenour.

¹ Kyng of kynges, and lorde of lorde3, Alexander þe soñ of godd' Amoñ and of þe quene Olympias, to Dindimus, kyng of þe Bragmayns, gretyng. If all be fuñd trew amanges 3ow þat þou hase sent wretyñd in thy *lettres*, þañd allanly 3e are gude meñd in þis werlde; for as þou says 3e do nañd ill. Bot wit þou wele² for certayne, þat þis maner of lyffying comme3 no3te of vertu bot of customd. All thynges þat we do, 3e saye es synñd. And all þe crafte3, þat ere amange3 vs on þe same wyse, 3e say, þay ere synnes. 3e wilt distroye all þe customs þat mañd-kynde hedir-towarde hase hadd' & used. Owther 3e schew bi 3our worde3, þat 3e are godde3, or ellis till goddes 3e hafe envy. And þare-fore 3e say, as 3e say, I may no3t write to 3ow all þe order of 3our lyffying. Bot als mekill þare-offe als I may vnderstande at this tyme, I sal writte vn-to 3ow. 3ee say 3e vse no3te for to till þe erthe, ne sawe na corne, ne plante na vynes, ne sett na trees, na to make na faire howse3. And þe cause here-of as it wele semes es for 3e hafe na Irenñ, whare-of 3e myghte make 3ow tuyles for to wirke with-alle. And þare-fore 3ow by-houes nedes ett herbes & lede an harde lyfe, ry3te as beste3. For 3e may nowþer gette brede ne flesche ne fysche. Does no3t wolves oñd þe same wyse, þe whilke, whēñ þay may no3te gete þaire fill of flesche, þay fill þaire belys of þe erthe? And it ware lesull or lykande to 3ow to come till oure cuntree, we sulde lere na wisdomd of 3oure nede. And þare-fore late 3our hunger habyde at hame in 3our awenñd cuntree. þat mañd es no3te mekills at eoumend' þat alwayes lyffes in disesse. Bot he es gretly to commend', þat in rechis lyffe3 attemperally. Bot and meñd schulde be commendid' þat are oppressed' wit disesse, þañd sulde blynd meñd, leprouse meñd, & oþer swilke oner all oþer be commendid'; þe blynde, for he sees no3t at desyre; þe pouer, for he hase no3te at do. And we walde make oure duellynge in 3our cuntree we sulde suffere

* Leaf 35 bk. Voe to the Greeks. Alexander is angry at this letter, and replies to Dindimus.

If it be as Dindimus says, then truly the Brahmins only are good.

Yet the Brahmins do this through custom, eschewing all civilization, and envy of the gods.

Their sparingness and virtues come from their poverty and the poorness of their country.

They are even as wolves.

If they come to Greece the Greeks should learn naught of them, so let them abide at home.

Poverty is not to be praised, but temperance in riches, nor are the maimed to be praised that they

¹ Five lines spaced red capital *K* with small *k* in the margin beside.

² Bot wit þou wele repeated in MS.

do no ill,
since their
defect

* Leaf 36.

hinders
them.
Their chas-
tity is due
to want of
food.
But the
Brahmins
live as mere
beasts.

The Brah-
mins seek
no learn-
ing, having
beastlike
no feeling
or delight
in good.
But men
can rejoice
through
free will.
The
changes of
the world
and of the
ages of
man are
even as the
day
brightens
and
darkens,
even as a
child is
simple,
youth pre-
sumptuous,
and old age
stable.
Who will
look for the
opposite?
The de-
lights of the
senses and
of those
things
given us by
earth, sea,
and sky.
Abstinence
from this is

pouert & wrechidnes ri3te as 3e do. 3e say also þat 3our wyfes
vse3 na prowde aray for to plese þaire husbande3, and þe cause
es for þay hafe na noþer * thyng for till araye þam̄ wit.¹ Also 3e
say 3e do nane advowtries ne fornyacions. And þat es na 4
meruaile! For-whi, how sulde þay hafe luste to lechery þat
etes no3te. Luste of lechery es no3te comonly, bot yf it come
of hete of þe leuer or ellis of habundance of mete & drynke.
Bot 3e ete na-thinge bot herbes & rote3, as 3e ware swyne, 8
& drynkes water & vnnethes may 3e slokeið 3our hunger and
þarefore 3e hafe nañ appitite to womenið.

‘3e hafe na liste to studie aboute lerynge, ne 3e seke na
mercy ne dees nane till oper. And all this 3e hafe in comonið 12
wit beste3. For ri3te as beste3 hase nowþer resoñ ne discreciõ,
ne hase na felynge of gude, ri3te so þay hafe na delite in gode.
Bot till vs resonable meñ þat has free will of kynde ere many
lykynges & blandeschynge3 granted. For it es im-possible þat 16
þis werlde wyde & brade sulde no3te hafe sunið chaungynge of
gouernance; So þat ne after heuyness & sorowe, Ioy & myrthe
sulde no3te folowe.² For-why manes will es variable & change-
able þat chaunge3 wit þe heuenið abownd. On þe same wyse 20
manes hert es dyuerse. For when þe day es clere, manes hert
es gladde & blythe. And when þe day es derke, manes wittis
are derke & dulle & heuy. Also meñ chaunge3 thurgh dyuerse
ages. For barnehed reioyse it in sympilnesse, 3outhede in 24
presumptuosnes, And grete elde in stabilnes. For wha will
luke efter wysdome in a childe, In a 3unge mañ stabiffnes, or
in an alde mañ wildenes? Many delitable thynges come3 till
oure mynde. For sunið we See wit oure eghne; Sunið we hafe 28
thurgh herynge; Sunið we fele thurgh smellyng; Sunið thurgh
tastyng; and Sunið thurgh towchyng. Sumtyme we hafe
delite in salutacions & swete sange3 & melodys of dyuerse
Instrumente3. Of þe erthe we hafe al maner of gud fruyte3; 32
of þe see we hafe habundance of fysche, and of þe ayere delyte
of fewles of dyuerse kyndis. If þou abstene þe fra all thies
owthir it es for pride or for envy. For pride, þat þou dispyse3
swilke precyouse gifte3. For envy bi-cause þay ere no3te gyffenið 36
3ow, as þat þay ere to vs. Bot efter mynið opynyonið I deme þat

¹ Leaf 35 þam wit; leaf 36 þam wit.

² The second vowel in *folowe* is difficult to read. It looks like *folewe*.

3our lyffing and 3our maners commes mare of foundnesse þaīd of wysdōm. For seīd 3e are meīd 3e schulde hafe þe vertu3 of a resonable creature, and þat hafe 3e no3hte.' When Dindimus 4 hadd' redd' þis *lettre*, onane he wrate anoper to kyng Alexander of þis tenour.

1 'Dyndimus, þe mayster of þe Bragmayns, vn-tiff Alexander, gretyng. We hafe vnderstand þe tenour of þi *lettres* & þus we 8 ansuere. We er no3te * lordez of this werlde, as we sulde euermare lyffe þare in. But we ere pilgrymes in þis werlde, and wheīd dede comme3 we wende tiff oper habytacions. Oure Synnez grenez vs no3te, ne we duelle no3te in þe tabernacles of 12 synners.² We do na thyfte. And for þe conscyence þat we haue, we gaa no3te furthe in open. We say no3te þat we ere goddes, ne nane envy hase vn-to þaīd. Godd' þat made all þat es in þis werlde, he ordeyned' many diuerse thynges. For 16 warne dyuersitees ware of thynges þe werld myzte no3hte stande. Godd' gaffe maīd fre will, for to discerne of all thynges þat ere in þe werld, and chese whilke hym lyst. Wharefore he þat leues þe itt & chese3 þe gude, no3te godd', but goddes 20 frende he may be called. Be-cause þat we lyffe contently, and in quiete & reste, 3e say þat we ere goddez, or elles þat we hafe envy to goddez. But this suspeccion þat 3e hafe of vs, pertenez to 3ow. For 3e þat ere blawēd full of 24 þe wynde of pride 3e aray 3our bodys wit glorious clethyng, and on 3our fyngers, 3e putt iowells of golde & precyous stanes.

'Bot I pray 3ow, what profit does þis 3ow: Golde and siluer 28 saues no3te a manes saule, ne sustenez no3te mens bodys. Bot we þat knawes þe verray profit of golde, and þe kynd' þare-offe, when vs thristez, & gase to þe ryuere for to take vs a drynke, if we fynde golde in þe way, we trede apōd it wit oure 32 fete. For golde noper fille3 vs wheīd we hunger, ne slokens oure thriste, ne it hele3 no3te a maīd þat es seke. If a maīd thriste & drynke water, it puttez away his thriste. Also if a maīd hunger & ete mete, it does away his hunger. Bot and 36 golde ware of þe same kynde, als soīd als a maīd hadd' it, þe vice of Couetyse suld be slokynde in hym. Be þis cause es golde itt.

due either to pride or peevishness. He deems the Brahmins live so through folly.

Dindimus to Alexander.

* Leaf 36 bk.

Man is not lord of this world, but a pilgrim in it. The virtue of the Brahmins.

God made things diuerse so that the world might endure.

He gave man free will to choose of all that which him list. Not they, but the Greeks, seem envious of the gods.

Gold and silver save none. They despise it as useless, quenching neither hunger nor thirst.

Neither does it slack the vice of covetousness.

¹ Two lines with small red capital *D* and small cursive *d* in the margin beside.

² MS. *synners* with a contraction mark over the *y*.

The more one has the more one desires. The Greeks worship wicked men, being themselves wicked, offering up beasts to their idols. Thus do they, who shall die, honour themselves.

* Leaf 37. Alexander to Dindimus. The Brahmins live as they do because they do not mingle with other men, but are shut off from them. They suffer even as those who lie in prison. He holds them as wretched fools, and could he but do it would march towards them with an army to make them leave their miserable life and become warriors.

For ay þe mare þat a mañ hase þare-offe, þe mare he couetes. Wikkede meñ are wvrchippede amangeȝ ȝow. For comonly a mañ luffes hym þat es lyke tiff hym selfeñ. ȝe say þat godd' takes nane hede tiff dedly thynges. And neuer-þe-lesse ȝe bygge 4 temples, and makes autres in þañd, and settis vp mawmettes abownñ þañd, and grete delyte hase whenñ bestes ere offerde, & in þam, and at ȝour name es noysede, þis was done to þi fader, to thyñ Eldfader, & tiff añ thi progenytours. And þe 8 same also es highte on-to þe. Wit swilke wirchipes þay ere rewarded, þat knowes noȝte þañd selfe dedly.' When Alexander hadd' redd' þis lettre onane he sente anoþer agayne and that was of this tenour þe whilk þat folowes.¹

¹² * ' Alexander, þe soñd of godd' Amoñ & of þe quene Olympias, kyng of kynges; & lorde of lordez, vn-to Dyndymus kyng of þe Bragmayns we sende. For als mekiff als ȝour duellynge es in þat partye of þe werlde fra þe begynnyng, whare na strangers 16 may comñ to ȝow, bot if it be rizte fewe, ne ȝe may noȝte passe forthe of ȝour cuntree, but als swa say ȝe, are parred' in, and na ferrere may passe; þarefore ȝe magnyfy ȝour manere of lyffynge and supposeȝ þat ȝe are blyssed' be-cause þat ȝe er so spered' in, 20 þat if ȝe walde neuer so gladly passe furthe for to lere þe customes þat oþer meñ vseȝ, ȝe may noȝte; and nyff-ȝe wilt-ȝe, ȝow by-honeȝ nedis suffere þat caytefftee þat ȝe lyffe in. Wharefore it semeȝ bi ȝour techynge, that þay þat liggeȝ in presonñ, 24 are als mekiff at comend' als ȝe, þe whilke vn-to þaire lyues ende suffres sorowe and nede. And as me thynke, þe gudnesse þat ȝe ruse ȝow offe, may wele be lykkened' to þe paynes of paim þat ere in presonñ. And so þat that oure lawe demes to be done t[i]ll wikked' 28 meñ, ȝe suffere kyndely. And þare-fore hym þat we halde wyse, ȝe halde an Ebbere fule³. Sothely me thynk ȝour lyffynge es noȝte blyssed' bot wrechid' and as it ware a chastying to ȝowe. I swere ȝow by oure goddeȝ of myghte, þat, & I myghte come 32 to ȝow with an oste, I sulde gare ȝow leue ȝour wrechid' lyfe, and by-come meñ of armes, als many of ȝow als ware able.' When Alexander had' sent this lettre tiff Dyndimus he gart

¹ The second vowel of *folowes* is often written so small as to render it uncertain whether it is an *o* or *e*.

² Four lines with red capital *A*.

³ *fon* written in MS. before *fule* and scratched out. This word *fon* or *fou* was complete and not a half-written word, as the MS. shows.

rayse vp a pelare of Marble a wonder grete, & an heghe, and gart writt *pare*-apon this title *wit lettres of grewe*, of latyne, and of þe langage of Inde. 'I Alexander, Philip̄ son of Macedoyne, after þe discomfytour & þe dedd of Darius & Porus come on werre vn-to this place.'

¹ Fra þeine kyng Alexander & his Oste remowed & come intiff a felde, þat was called Actea & þare þay lused. Abowte
⁸ þat felde was a thikke wodd of treesse berand fruyte; of þe whilke wilde meñ þat duelt in þe Same wodd vsede for tiff hafe þaire fude, whase bodyes ware grete as geauntez, and þaire clethyng ware made of skyunes of dyuerse beste. And wheñ
¹² þay saw Alexander Oste luge þare, onane þare come oute of þe wodd, a grete multitude of þam̄ wit lange rodde in þaire handz & bi-gañ for to feghte wit þe oste. And þan Alexander commanded þat all [þe] oste schulde sette vp a schowte at aues. And also
¹⁶ sone als þe wylde* meñ herde þat² noyse, þay were wondere fered be-cause þay had neuer be-fore herde swilke a noyse. And thañ þay be-gañ to flee hedir & thedir in þe wodd. And Alexander & his meñ persued þam̄ and slewe of þam̄ vi^c xxx iiij. And þay slew
²⁰ of Alexander knyghtes xxvij. In þat felde Alexander & his oste leuged iij dayes and vetailed þam of þat fruyte þat growed in þe wodd.

³ Fra þeine þay remowed and come tiff a grete ryuer, & lused
²⁴ þam þare. And as it ware abowte none, þare come apoñ þam a wilde mañ, als mekill als a geaunte. And he was rughe of hare añ ouer, and his hede was lyke tiff a swyne, And his voyce also. And wheñ Alexander saw hym, he bad his knyghtis tak
²⁸ hym & bryng hym bi-for hym. And wheñ þay come abowte hym, he was na thyng fered, ne fledd nozte, bot stodd baldly bi-fore þam̄. And when Alexander saw that, he comanded þat þay sulde take a zonge damesell & nakked hir & sett hir bi-fore hym.
³² And þay did soo. And onane, he ranne apoñ hir romyandd as he hadd bene wodd. Bot þe knyghtes wit grete deficultee refte hyr fra hym. And ay he romyed & made grete mane. And este þay broghte hym tiff Alexander and sett hym bi-fore hym.
³⁶ And Alexander wonderd gretly of his figure. And þam̄ he

Alexander raised up a pillar and wrote his victories on it in Greek, Latin, and in the language of India.

They come to a forest full of wild men eating fruit and clothed in the skins of beasts.

They fight Alexander with rods in their hands.

* Leaf 37 bk.

The Greeks put them to flight by shouting, and slay many of them.

They come to a great river and stay there. There they meet a wondrous wild man with a swine's head and voice.

They tempt him with a naked damsel and

¹ Four lines with red capital F.

² þat at the bottom of leaf 37 and þe at the top of leaf 37 bk.

³ Five lines with large red F, small f beside.

then burn him alive. They come to a wondrous wood-land with trees that spring up in the day-time and at sunset sink back into the earth, with fruit of sweet smell but of bitter taste.

A knight takes of this, but is smitten dead by an evil spirit, and a voice proclaims the same to any that come nigh. In that

* Leaf 38.

place are tame birds, and who touches them is scorched by fire. They come to a mountain, climb for 8 days, and at the top they fight dragons, etc. Going down they come into a dark valley with wondrous trees and streams, and a mountain with thick air.

gerte bynd hym till a tree & make a fyre abowte hym & brynne hym. And so þay didd. ¹ Fra þeine þay removed & come till anoþer felde in þe whilke þare ware growand tresse, of a wonderfull heghte, and þay bigaþ for to sprynge vp at þe soñ rysynge ; 4 And bi þe soñ settinge þay wyted a-way in-to þe erthe agayne. At þe firste houre of þe day þay bi-gaþ to sprynge oute of þe erthe, & so þay wex ay to myddaye, and þaþ þay bi-gaþ to decrese. And by þe soñ settinge þay ware in þe erthe agayne, 8 And was na thyng of þaþ sene bi-fore oñ þe morne. Þir tresse bare a fruyte wonder swete of refflayre bot þay [ware] bitter of taste. When Alexander saw þat fruyte he bade a knyghte bryng hym þareoffe. And he went & tuk þare-offe, and onane 12 a wikked spirit smate hym, and be-lyfe he was dede. And þaþ þay herd a voyce in þe ayer þat said on þis wyse : ‘ What mañ so neghes þir tresse he sañ dye onane.’ Þare was also in þat felde fewles wonder meke & tame. Bot what mañ so layde 16 hande on any of þam, onane þare come fire oute of þaþ, & brynt hym rihte greuosly.

* 2 Than þay removed fra þeine, And come till a Mountayne, þat was so hye, þat þay ware viij dayes in gangyng ar þay 20 myzte wyne to þe heghte þare-offe. And wheñ þay come to þe heghte of it, þare come agaynes þaþ a grete multitude of dragones, Serpentes, and lyones þe whilke turmentid Alexander & his meñ reghte gretely. And at þe laste, þay askaped þaire 24 daungere, and went doune of þe mountayne and come in-till a vaylay þat was so myrke þat vnnethes myghte ane of þaþ See anoþer. In þat depe valay ware tresse growand of whilke þe fruyte & þe lefes ware wonder sauory in þe tastynge, and reuelis 28 of water faire & clere. Aglite dayes contenuelly þay saw na soñ. And at þe viij days end þay come to þe fote of a mountayne where aþ þe Oste thurgh a wikked thikk ayer ware so gretley disessed þat þay ware in poynte to hafe bene choked 32 þare-offe. And wheñ þay come a-bowñ on þe mountayne, þay fande þe ayer mare sotell, and þe lighte of þe day mare clere. And þus þay ware wendand vpwarde, oñ þis Mountayne Elleuēñ, xj, days wit grete trauaile. And wheñ þay come to þe 36

¹ Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* beside.

² Four lines with red capital *T* and

a dragon within, and the head of a dragon above with sting out.

hegheste of þis Mountayne, þay saw on þe toper syde faire weder
 & bryghte. And þaṁ þay went dowṁ of þis Mountayne, and
 come in tiff a grete playne of whilke þe erthe was wonder rede.
 4 And in þis playne þare ware growande tresse wit-owtten
 nowmer; and þay passed nozte a cubit in heghte, & þaire fruyte
 & þaire lefes ware passandly swete as þay had bene fyges. And
 þay fande þare reueffs rizte many, of clere water as cristaffe.
 8 And it was als nureschand to manes body, as it hadd bene
 mylke wit-outeṁ eny ojer mete. Thurgh þat ilk playne þay
 went fourty .xl. days and þaṁ þay com tiff wonder heghe
 Mountaynes; and it semed as þe toppes had towched þe firma-
 12 ment. And þir Mountaynes ware als brant vp-rizte as þay had
 bene walles. So þat þare was na clymbyng vpoṁ þam. And at
 þe laste þay fande twa passagez be-twix þase Mountaynes, of
 whilke, þe tane streched to-warde þe west, and þe toper towarde
 16 þe Este. Than Alexander demed þat that dyuysoṁ be-twix þase
 Mountaynes was made thurgh Noye flode. And þaṁ þay went
 by þat passage þat streched to warde þe Este Seneṁ days.
 And oṁ þe heghteṁ .viiij. day þay fande a Basilisc þat meṁ
 20 callez a Cocatrys, a grete & ane horrible. And bicause of his
 grete elde he was fouff stynkand. * Þis ilke Basilisc was so
 venymous, þat nozte aṁ anely thurgh his stynke, bot also
 thurgh his sighte allane, whayṁ so he loked oṁ, he sulde dy
 24 onane; þaṁ þe Macedoynes and þe persyenes, as þay passede
 thurgh þe strayt way dyed thikk-falde thurgh þe sighte of þat¹
 Basilisc. And wheṁ Alexander knyghtis saw that periff, þay
 durste passe na forther bot saiṁ amangez þaṁ: 'þe vertue of
 28 oure goddes,' quoth þay, 'es bifore vs, þat schewes vs þat we
 schulde ga na forthir.' Bot Alexander went bi hym ane vppoṁ
 an heghe cragge, where he myghte see on ferrome fra hym.
 And þaṁ he saw this pestellencius beste þe Basilisc lygg
 32 slepande in myddes of þe passage. Þe kynde of hym was þat,
 als so sone als he felid a maṁ or a beste comṁ nere hym,
 for to opeṁ his eghue & stare appoṁ þaṁ, and als many
 als he loked oṁ, solde sudaynly falle douṁ & dye. When
 36 Alexander had sene hym, Be lyfe he went doune of þe²
 cragge, and gart sett a merke þat na maṁ sulde passe. And

They climb
 this mountain
 for eleven days
 and then they
 come through
 clear weather
 into a land of
 red earth grow-
 ing dwarf trees
 with wonder-
 fully sweet
 fruit. And
 here they
 find crystal
 streams whose
 waters nourish
 as though they
 were milk.
 They march
 through that
 plain forty
 days, and then
 they come to
 mountains
 whose tops
 reach the skies
 and in which
 were two
 passages, one
 towards the
 west and the
 other towards

* Leaf 38 bk.
 the east, which
 Alexander
 thinks were
 made by the
 Flood. They go
 east seven
 days.
 On the
 eighth day
 they find a
 Basilisk that
 slays through
 look alone.
 He kills many.
 Alexander sur-
 veys him from
 afar off.

¹ þat inserted above the line by scribe.

² g first turned into c, then finally erased between þe and cragge.

Alexander approaches him shielded by a mirror, so that the Basilisk slays himself with his own glances

The Basilisk being slain they burn him, and praise Alexander.

At last they found their way barred, and must come back to the plain. Then they went westward fifteen days and then to the left. They come to a mountain of adamant hung

* Leaf 39.

around with chains of gold and with sapphire steps.

Alexander goes up the mountain with twelve princes, and finds a wondrous palace of precious

það he gart a pavysse be made seuēd cubites of lenghte & foure oñ brede; and oñ þe vtter syde þare-offe he gart sett a grete Mirroure, And a large. And at þe nethir ende of þe pavisse he gart nayle a burde þe lenthe of a cubit for to couere 4 wit his legges, and his fete, so þat na party of hym myzte be sene. And þan Alexander tuk þis pavisse in his handis, and went towarde this Basilisc, and warned his meñ þat nañ of það sulde passe his termes. And wheñ he come nere þe 8 basilisc, þe basilisc opynde his eghne. And wit a grete ire he bi-helde þe Mirroure and saw hym-selfe þare-in. And of þe reflexcion of þe bemes of his sighte strykande appoñ hym-selfe Sudanly he was dede. And wheñ Alexander knewe wele þat 12 he was dede, he called tiff his knyghtis; And bad það come see hym þat slewe þaire felawes. And wheñ þay come tiff hym, þay saw þe Basilisc dede. And það þay comended & prayssed gretly his hardynesse and his hye witt, And went & 16 bryneþe þe Basilisc at þe commandement of Alexander.

¹ Fra þeine þay went tiff þey come to þe ferreste of þat waye; and ferrere myzte þay nozte wynd. For þare ware so hye Mountaynes agaynes það and craggēs like walles þat þay 20 myzte passe no forþer. And það þay turned agayne, and come to þe forsaide playne; and went by þat way þat streched towarde þe weste fyvftene .xv. days. And það þay lefte þat way, And turnede oñ þe lefte hande. And so þay went foure score 24 ^{xx} iiij days, and at þe laste þay come tiff a Mountayne of adamande; and at þe fute þare-offe þare hange chynes of golde. Þis Mountayne hadd made * of saphyres twa thowsande 28 gree; & a halfe, by þe wilke meñ ascendid to þe summit of þe Mountayne. And þare Alexander & his Oste lugeþ það.

² And on þe morne Alexander Offerd sacrafice tiff his goddes, And það he tuk with hym xij twelue pryncez of þe wyrchip- 32 fulleste þat he hade, and went vp bi þe forsaide greez till he come abouñ oñ þe Mountayne. And þare he fande a palace wonder faire and curiously wroghte; and it hade twelve gates and thre score & teñ wyndows. And þe lyntaïs bathe of þe 36 durs and of þe wyndows ware of fyñ golde, wele burnescht, and þat Palace was called þe howse of þe soñ. Þare was also

¹ Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* beside.

² Four lines with red capital *A*.

a temple all of golde & of precious stanes, And bi-fore þe
dores þare-offe þare was a vyne of golde, berande grapes of
charbuncles, of Rubyes, Dyamandez, and many oþer maneres of
4 þe precious stanes. Ðað kyng Alexander & his princez went in-to
þe palace; and fande þare a mañ liggand in a bedd of golde, and
couerd wit a riche clathe of golde. And he was riȝte a mekill
mañ and a faire, And his berde & his heued ware als whitt
8 als any wolle; and hym semed lyke a Bischoppe. Als soñ als
Alexander & his pryncez saw þis alde mañ þay kuelid dounne
on þaire kneesse and saluste hyn. And he ansuerd & saide:
'Welcomð Alexander,' quop he, 'I telle the þou salt see, þat neuer
12 flescly mañ bi-fore this tyme sawe; And þou salt here þat neuer
erthly mañ herde are.' And Alexander ansuerd & sayd: 'Maste
blyssed alde mañ,' quoth he, 'how hase þou knawying of me?'
'For sothe,' quoth he, 'bi-fore Noy flode couerde all þe erthe,
16 knewe I bathe the, & thi dedis. I wate wele þou desyres for
to See þe haly treez of þe Soñ And þe Mone þe whilke tellez
thyngesz þat ere to come.' 'Ȝaa for sothe,' quop Alexander,
'þer es na-thinge þat I desyre mare, það for to see það.'
20 And he was riȝt gladd. Ðað saide þe alde mañ til hym:
'And Ȝe be clene of flescly dede wit women, það es it leefull
to Ȝow to see það and to entir in-to þat haly place þat es
a sette of godd. And if Ȝe be noȝte clene, it es noȝte leefull
24 to Ȝow.' 'Ȝis, sir, sothely,' quop Alexander, 'we ere clene.'
Ðað raise þe alde mañ vp of þe bedd þat he lay in, and
said vn-to það: 'Puttez offe Ȝour ryngesz,' quop he, 'and Ȝoure
clathes, & Ȝour schone, and folowes me.' And þay dyd¹ so.
28 And það Alexander tuk wit hym tholomeus and Antiochus,
& folowed þe alde mañ, and went thurgh þe wodd þat
was about oñ þe Mountayne closed with mannes handez.
þe * treesse of þat wodd ware an hundreth .c. fote lange &
32 hye, and þay ware lyke lorers or Olyue treesse; And out
of það þare rañ rykyles & fynne bawme. And as þay went
thurgh þat wodd þay saw a tree wondere hye, in þe whilke
þare satt a mekill fewle. þat tree hadd noþer þare-oñ lefes ne
36 fryte. þe fewle þat satt þare-oñ hadd oñ his hedd a creste
lyk til a pacokke, & his beeke also crested. Abowte his nekke,
he hadd fethirs lyke golde. þe hynder of hym was lyk purple;

metal and
stones.

He goes
into the
palace.

He finds an
aged man
there of
Bishop-like
appear-
ance.

He kneels
and salutes
him.

The aged
man speaks
and tells
him he
shall see
and hear
what never
earthly
man did
before.

He shall have
his desire
and know
the future.

He can only
see the holy
trees of the
sun and the
moon if
clean of
fleshy
deeds.

He must
put off
every-
thing to see
them.

Alexander,
Ptolemy,
and Anti-
ochus fol-
low the

* Leaf 39
bk.

old man
through the
wood on the
mountain,
through
wondrous
trees that
shed in-
cense and
balm.

¹ The scribe first wrote *de* and then changed the *e* into a *y*, making it into *dyl*.

They see the Phoenix. They come to the holy trees of the sun and the moon. The old man tells him to look up and think and the Spirit of the Trees shall answer his thought. These trees were high. The leaves of the sun tree golden red, of the moon tree shining white. Alexander would sacrifice to these trees but may not. The sun tree speaks in Indian or Greek, the moon tree begins in Greek and ends in the language of India. He gets his answer. He shall win the world but never see home again.

* Leaf 40.

Twenty months

and þe taylor was ownnded^r ouerthwert, wit a colour reede as rose & wit blewe. And his fethers ware rizte faire schynand^r. When Alexander saw þis fewle he was gretely meruailled^r of þe faired^r of hym; það saide þe Alde mañ: 'Alexander,' quop^r 4 he, 'þis ilke fewle þat þou here seese es a fenix.' And það þay went forþer thurgh þe forsaid^r wodd^r, And come to thiese haly treez of þe soñ & þe mone þat growed^r in myddez of þe wodde. And það þe alde mañ saide tiff Alexander: 'Luke vp,' 8 quop^r he, 'to zone haly treez, and thynke in thi hert what preuatee so þe liste, and þou sañt hafe a trewe ansuere. Bot luke þat þou speke na worde in opyñ. And þare-by sañt þou witt þat it es a gude spiritt, þat knawes thi thoghte.' Thir 12 twa treez were wonder hye. And þe tree of þe Soñ had leues lyk fyne golde, reed & faire schynande. And þe tree of þe mone had lefes whitt als syluer & faire schynande. And það walde Alexander hafe Offrede Sacrafyce to þir treez. Bot 16 þe alde mañ walde nozte suffre hym, bot said^r: 'It es nozte leuefull,' quop^r he, 'in þis haly place, nowþer to offre encense, ne to slaa na bestez, Bot to knele douñ to þe boles of þir treez & kysse það & pray þe soñ & þe mone to giffe trew ansuers.' 20 And þan Alexander spirred^r þe alde mañ, in what langage þe treez sulde giffe þaire answers. And þe alde mañ ansuerd^r & said^r: 'The tree of þe Son,' quop^r he, 'answers owþer all in þe langage of Inde or eñs of grewe. And þe tree of þe Mone 24 begynnez wit þe langage of grewe & endez wit þe langage of Inde.' And as þay stode þus spekande, Sudaynly þare come a bryghte beme fra þe weste þat schane ouer all þe wodde. And það Alexander kneled^r douñ, and kyssede þe treez an 28 thoght þus in his hert: 'Sañt I conquere all þe werlde, and efterwardez wit þe victorye wende hame to Macedoyne tiff my moder Olympias, and my sisters? And * það þe tree of þe soñ ansuerd^r softly in þe langage of Inde, And said þir versez: 32

'*Tú dominātorum orbis dominus simul et pater extas,
Set patrum rignum¹ per tempora nulla videbis;*'

þat es at say, 'þou ert bathe lorde & fader of alle þe werlde, Bot þe Rewme of thy Fadrys sañt þou neuer see wit thyñ eghne.' 36 Það bygañ Alexander to thynke how lange he sulde lyffe,

¹ Sic in MS.

and whate dedd^d he sulde dye. And þe tree of þe Monē
ansuerd^d by þir twa versez :

shall he
live and his
friend shall
poison him.

‘Anno completo viues & mensibus octo,

4 De quo confidis tibi mortis pocula dabit.’

þat es at saye, ‘A twluemonthē & aughtē monethes salþ þou lyffe.
And þaṅd he þat þou traistez oṅ, salþ giffe þee a drynke of dedd^d.’
þaṅd bi-gaṅd *Alexander* to thynke in his hert oṅ þis wyse,

8 ‘Tell me nōw, hāly trēc,

Wha he ès þat sall slāa mēe.’

And þaṅd þe tree of þe soṅd ansuerd^d by þir twa versez :

‘Si tibi pandatur vir qui tua facta resoluet,

12 Illum confrynges & sic mea carmina fallent.’

þat es at say : ‘And I schew the þe manes name, þat salþ vudo
thi dedis, þou wilt slāa hyṅd, and so salþ my prophycye fayle.’

Did he
but know
the man's
name, he
would try
to undo the
prophecies.
The old
man bids
him not
incommode
the trees.

And þaṅd þe forsaide ald maṅd sayd^d tiff *Alexander* : ‘Disese
16 na mare þir trees,’ quōþ he, ‘wit thyne askynges. Bot tourne
we agayne, as we come hedir.’ And þaṅd *Alexander* & his twa
prynceez wit hym tourned^d agayne wit þe alde maṅd. And ay as
he went, he weped^d bitterly, bi-cause of his schorte tyme ; and

20 his prynceez also weped^d rihte sare. Bot he commanded^d þaṅd þat
þay schulde nozte tesse to na maṅd of his Oste þat that þay hadd^d
herde & sene. And wheṅ þay ware comēd to þe forsaide Palace
þe alde [man] said^d vn-tiff *Alexander* : ‘Torne bakke agayne,’

24 quoth he, ‘for it es nozte leefull to na maṅd to passe forthire.
If þe liste wende toward^d þe weste, þou salþ nozte trauelle full
lange are þou come to þe place, whare þe liste to bec.’ And
wheṅ þe alde maṅd had said^d þir wordez, he went in-to þe palace

28 and *Alexander* and his twa prynceez went douṅd by þe forsaide
greeez & come to þe Oste.

He goes
away weep-
ing.
He com-
mands his
friends to
tell no
man.
The old
man bids
him turn
back and
travel to
the west.

¹ Apon þe morne *Alexander* & his Oste remowed^d þeine & went
agayneward^d fyftene days, And come agayne to þe forsaide^d
32 playne & þare þay lused þaṅd. And þare at þe entree of þa
twa forsaide^d ways, *Alexander* gart rayse vp twa pelers of Marble,
and by-twixe þaṅd he haude a table of golde, on þe whilke was
wretyn in þe langage of grewe, hebrew, of latyne, and of Inde,
36 one this wyse : ‘I, *Alexander*, *Phillipp*¹ soṅd of Macedoyne,

Alexander
journeys
fifteen
days and
then raises
up two
marble
pillars,
between
them a
table of

¹ Four lines with red capital A.

gold with letters in Greek.

* Leaf 40 bk.

Hebrew, Latin, and Indian, telling of his great deeds and guiding after-comers.

Thence they go westwards towards Macedonia and come to the country of Prasiac.

The men of the country bring him presents.

There is in that country a city of precious stones

ruled over by a widow queen and her sons. Alexander writes to Queen Candace sending presents, asking her

to come that they may offer sacrifice together.

Queen Candace writes to Alexander on his conquests, but proclaims that they may not

sett thir pelers here, after þe dedd^r of Darius kyng of Perse and of Porus kyng of Inde. What mañ so wiff passe forþer late hyñd * *tourne* one þe lefte hand. For wha so *tournez* one þe riȝte hande he sañ fynde many obstacleȝ & greuanceȝ þat 4
sañ *peraventure* lett his agayne-commynge.'

¹ Fra þe þeine þay removed thurgh þat playne and lefte þase strayte wayes, takand^r þe way westeward^r þe gayneste towarde Macedoyne. And at þe laste þay come tiñf a cuntree þat highte 8
Prasiac, And þare þay lugeð þañd. And whēñ meñ of þat cuntree herd^r of þe commynge of Alexander, wit grete wirchipe þay broghte hym grete *presanteȝ* of swilk thyngēȝ as þay hadd^r in þaire lande, þat es at say, skynnes of fischeȝ lyke vn-to þe 12
skynnes of pardes, or of lyouns also, and lawmpray skynnes of sex cubites lange. In þat cuntree was a noble citee all of *precious* stanes made wit-owtten^r lyme or sande, sett apoñ an hill. Of þe whilke citee, a wirchipsuff lady and a faire hadd^r 16
þe lordechipe. Þis lady was wedowe and scho hadd^r three sones. The firste of þañd highte Candeolus, þe secand^r Marcipius, And þe thirde hight Carator. To þis lady Alexander sent a *lettre* of þis tenour :

² Alexander þe soñ of godd^r Amoñ & of þe quene Olympias, kyng of kynges & lorde of lordes vn-to quene Candace of Meroñ ioy & gretyng. We sende ȝow ane ymage of godd^r Amoñ all of fyne golde; And þarefore comeȝ tiñf vs þat we may wende 24
togeder to þe Mountayne for to make sacrafyce þare to godd^r Amon.' Whēñ þe Qwene Candace hadd^r redd^r þis *lettre*, Scho sent hir *embassatours* tiñf kyng Alexander wit grete *presanteȝ* and with a *lettre* of this tenour :

³ Candace, quene of Meroñ, vn-tiñf Alexander, kyng of kyngēȝ, ioy. Wele we knawe þat ȝe hafe by reuelaciōñ of godd^r Amoñ þat ȝe schulde conquere Perse, Inde and Egipte, and subiecte vn-to ȝow all *oper* nacions. And all þat ȝe hafe 32
done, noȝte allanly was graunted^r bot also of all *oper* goddeȝ. Tiñf vs þat hase faire saules & bryghte it nedeȝ noghte to make sacrafyce to godd^r Amoñ in þe Mountaynes. Neuer-þe-lesse bicause we wiff noȝte offende ȝowere maiestatee, we sende tiñf 36

¹ Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* in margin beside.

a beside.

² Four lines with red capital *A* and

³ Four lines with red capital *C* and *c* in the margin.

Amoñ 3oure godd a Coroñ of golde and precyouse stanes, And
 teñ chynes¹ of golde sett full of precious stanes. And vn-to
 3ow we sende a hundrethe Besauntez of golde; And twa
 4 hundreth papeiayes closed in cagez * of golde, c childer of
 Ethipes, cc apes, cccc Olyphantis. xxxiiii^{xx} vnycornes, iij panters
 skynnez, of pardez & lyounes cccc, and we beseke 3owre hye
 maieste þat 3e wylf notyfyve vn-till vs bi 3our wirchipfull lettres,
 8 wheder 3e haue conquered alle þe werlde and made it subiecte
 vn-to 3ow or nozte.⁷ Amangez her embassatours þat scho sent
 till Alexander þare was a wonder crafty & a sutell payntoure.
 And hym scho charged þat he schulde besely by-halde Alexander
 12 & purtray his fygure in a parchemyñ skynñ and brynge it to hir.
 And so he did. Alexander ressayued þe forsaid gyftes reuerently
 and sent hir noble gyftes agayne wif hir embassatours. And
 whedñ þay come hame þe payntour tuke hir þe feigure of Alexander
 16 purtrayed as I saide be-fore. And whedñ þe quene saw it, Scho
 was ri3te gladde, for scho desyred grētly for to see his fygure.
² After þis ane of þe quene somes þat hight Candeolus went
 furthe of þe Citee wif his wyfe and a fewe of his men3ee for to
 20 take þe sporte. And onane þe kyng of þe Bebrikes, knawying
 þe fairehed of Candeolus wyfe, come appoñ þañ with a grete
 multitude of meñ, and slew many of Candeolus men3ee and
 reſte hym his wyfe & went his way. And þañ Candeolus and
 24 his meñ þat ware leſte on lyfe went till Alexander Oste for to
 be-seke hym of helpe agaynes þe kyng of Bebrikes. And þe
 waches of þe oste tuke Candeolus & broghte hym bi-fore
 Tholomeus, þat was þe secunđ person after Alexander. And
 28 Tholomeus spirred hym what he was, & what he did þare.
 ‘I am,’ quop he, ‘quene Candace soñ and þis day als I went
 wif my wyfe & a preucee men3ee for to take þe sporte, þe kyng
 of þe Bebrikes come apoñ vs wif a grete multitude of meñ and
 32 hase slayne many of my men3ee & reſte me my wyfe. And
 þare-fore I am comen heder for to beseke my lord, þe Emperour,
 of helpe & socoure.’ When Tholomeus had herd þis onane
 he garte take kepe of Candeolus & went till Alexander tentis
 36 and wakkned Alexander & talde hym & talde ilk a dele þat
 Candeolus had talde hym. And whedñ Alexander hadd herde

sacrifice
to Amon.
Nevertheless.

* Leaf 41.
she
sends him
presents—
a crown of
gold, a
hundred
bezants,
slave-
children,
and vari-
ous strange
beasts.
These gifts
she sends
by a painter
who is to
portray
Alexander
on a parch-
ment skin.
And so it
was done.

Candeolus
goes out of
the city
with his
wife and a
few for
sport. A
hostile
king know-
ing the
wife's
beauty
comes and
reaves her
away. Can-
deolus
comes for
help and
is brought
to Ptolemy.
He pro-
claims who
he is and
his errand.

Ptolemy
sends to
Alexander
and
wakens
him.

¹ *Chenes* first written; but when the scribe had written *e* he wrote *y* over it and joined it to the next letter.

² Four lines with red capital A

Alexander bids Pto-
* Leaf 41
bk.
lemyp put on a crown as though he were Alexander and let him send for Antiochus, and Alexander will come as Antiochus and ask counsel of Alexander as though he were Antiochus. Ptolemy does as Alexander bids him. Alexander then counsels that the king should be commanded to deliver up Candeolus' wife that night or otherwise destroy his city. Candeolus thanks Alexander as though he were Antiochus. Alexander does as he counsels and with a great force calls on the king to deliver back Candeolus' wife or else they will burn

his tale he badd^d hym gange agayne till his tent and do a coronū oñ his hede and putt apoñ hym þe kynges clothyng, * and sett hym in the kynges trone & say vn-to Candeolus þat he was kyng Alexander. 'And bidd^d an of thi meñ,' 4
quop he, 'seche vn-to þe Antyochns, And late hym bryng me to þe insteed^d of Antyochns, and wheñ I come bi-for thee telle me bi-fore Candeolus¹ aff þat he talde the. And aske me conseff, als I ware Antyochns, what es beste to do in þat mater.' 8
Tholomeus went and didd^d aff als Alexander badd^d hym. And he asched^d Alexander in stedd^d of Antyochns be-fore Candeolus what was beste to do. And Alexander ansuerd^d & sayde on herand^d Candeolus: 'Wirchipfull Emperour,' quop he, 'if it be 12
plesyng to your maiestee I wiff go wit Candeolus þis same nyghte to þe kyng of þe Bebrikes, and comande hym one your byhalue þat he zelde Candeolus his wyfe agayne. And if he wiff noyte do soo, I saff late hym witt þat 3e saff sende a grete 16
powere to his Citee & bryne it vp stikke & stourre.' When Candeolus hadd^d herde hym say þus, he knelyd^d vn-till hym & said^d: 'A a, wirchipfull Antyochns,' quop he, 'wele walde it seme þe for to be a kyng for þe hye witt and þe manhede þat es 20
in the.' Thañ kyng Alexander tuke wit hym a grete powere and went apoñ þe same nyghte wit Candeolus vn-to þe Citee, whare þe kyng of þe Bebrikes lay. And whañ þay come to þe citee, þe waytes cryed^d apoñ þañ, and askede what þay ware. 24
And Alexander ansuerd^d & sayd^d: 'Candeolus,' quop he, 'es here wit ane Oste of meñ, and þe cause of his commynge es to be restorede agayne of his wyfe þe whilke your kyng raueste away fro hym þis same day. And my lord^d kyng Alexander com- 28
mande3 your þat 3e delyuer hir anone, or sewrely we saff brynne this citee & your selfe are we passe hethyñ.' And wheñ þe meñ of þe citee herde this, þay ware ferde ynoghe² and onane went to þe kynges palace & brakke vp þe gates, & tuke Candcolus 32
wyfe & delyuerd^d hir till hir lorde. Þañ Candeolus kneled^d douñ till Alexander & saide vn-till hym: 'A a, my dere frende,' quop he, 'wirchipfull Antyochns, Blyssed mot þou be for þis grete gudncs þat þou hase schewed^d mee. And I beseke the nowe þat 36

¹ The scribe has written *Antyochns* instead of *Candeolus*, then scratched it out, and written *Candeolus* again.

² The scribe has first written *ynoghe* and inserted the *o* above.

pou wilt vouche-saffe for to wende with me vn-to my moder quene Candace, þat scho may rewarde þe for þis þat þou hase done for me.' And when Alexander herde this he was riȝte gladde. For he had gretely desyrede for to see quene Candace & hir citee also. And þan he sayd: 'Goo we,' quoth he, 'to þe emperour and asche hym leue.' And þay did soo; and when he had leue, he went wit Candecolus. And as þay went to-gedir þay come til¹ heghe mountaynes þat reched vp to þe clowdes and apon þam þare growed trees of a wonderfull heghte lyke * vn-to² cedres þat bare appylls of Inde riȝte grete, Of þe whilk Alexander wonderde hym gretly. Þay saw also þare vynes growe wit wondere grete bobbis of grapes; for a mañ myȝte vnnetheȝ bere aȝ of þaȝ. Þare ware also trees þat bare nuttez als grete als gourddes. And þare ware also many apes. Fra þeine þay went & come to þe citee of quene Candace.

16 And when Candace herd tell þat hir soȝ Candecolus and his wyfe ware comande and ware safe & sounde, And at a messangere of kyng Alexander come wit þaȝ, scho was wonder gladde; and onane scho arayed hir ryally as a quene suld be, and sett apon hir hedde a crouȝ full ryche aȝ of golde sett full of precyouse stanes, and went furthe wit hir lordes to þe zates of hir palace, for to mete hir soȝ Candecolus and Alexander messenger. This quene was a wondere faire lady & a semely; And when Alexander saw hir, hym thoghte als he hade sene his moder Olympias. Hir palace was wonder ryalte & precyouse and aȝ þe ruffe þare-of schane wit golde & precyouse stanes. Thiaȝ quene Candace tuke Alexander bi þe haude, And ledð hym vp til¹ hir chambir, whare þare ware beddes arayed wit þe fyneste clathes of golde þat myghte be getyȝ; And þat chambir was of golde & precyous stanes, þe whilke are called Onychyns & þe burdez & þe bynkes of euour & Smaragdez & Amatistes. Þe Pelers of þe Palace ware aȝ of Marble, And þar ware graued in þaȝ cartes of werre, þat semed to mannes sighte as þay hadð bene rynnand; And Olyphauntes tredand meȝ vnder þaire fete. Vndermethe þat Palace rane a water wonder swete, & clere as any cristalle.

the city. The citizens revolt and return Candecolus' wife. Candecolus thanks Alexander again as Antiochus, and invites him to come to his mother's city. At this Alexander is glad, for he had greatly desired to see Queen Candace and her city. They ask leave of the Emperor as it were. He goes with Candecolus. They come to mountains that reach up to the sky, with wondrous tall trees and vines with great bunches of grapes and nut-like gourds, and many apes were there. They come to Candace, who comes arrayed to meet them as a queen. She is of great beauty; and her palace is rich. She takes him to her privy chamber with its wonderful works of art.

¹ The scribe first wrote 'an heghe', but then scratched out the *an*.

² On leaf 41 we have the words *lyke to*

þe cedres. On leaf 42 it continues *lyke vn-to cedres*.

þat day Alexander etc wit quene Candace & hir childre.

The next day she goes alone with Alexander to her with-drawing room, which lies beyond her bedroom. Her with-drawing room is moved on wheels by elephants. Alexander utters his wonder.

* Leaf 42 bk.

Queen Candace addresses him by name. Alexander's fear.

She shows him his portrait. Alexander fears again.

She rails at him that he, the conqueror of the world, is fallen into a woman's hands.

Alexander is angered. She rails at him further.

¹ Apoñ þe morne quene Candace tuk Alexander by þe right hande & ledd̄ hym in-tiff hir bedd̄-chambir, and nane wit þañ, Bot þay twa allañ. Þis chambir was couerde all ouer wit-in 4 wit golde & precious stanes. And it schane wit-in, as it had bene þe sonne. And oute of þis chambir scho ledd̄ hym in-tiff a wit-drawyng chambir made of cypresse. Þis chambir was sett apoñ foure wheles by crafte of clergy; And twenty xx^{ti} Oly- 8 phauntis drewe it whed̄ir as scho wolde hafe it. And wheñ Alexander & þe quene ware entrede in-to þat chambir, onane it stirred̄ & by-gan for to remowe. And þañ Alexander was astonayde & meruaylled̄ hym̄ gretly & said vn-to þe 12 quene: 'For sothe,' quop he, '& þir meruailis ware in oure cuntree þay ware riȝte commendable & mekill worthy* to be praysede.' The quene answerde: 'Þou saise sothe, Alexander,' quop scho, 'þay ware mare commendable amangeþ þe Grekeþ, 16 þañ amangeþ vs.' And also sone als Alexander herde hys name be neuenede, he was gretly trubblede, and his vesage bi-gañ to waxe pale, and his chere to change. And than the quene said este vn-to hym: 'Alexander,' quop she, 'for to schewe 20 þe mare verrayly þat þou ert Alexander, coñd̄ with me.' And þañ scho tuk hym̄ by þe hande & leedde hym in-tiff anoþer chambir, and schewed̄ hym þare his awenñ Figure purtrayed̄ in a parchemyñ skyne. And wheñ Alexander saw þat, he wex 24 pale & wanne & biganne to tremblee. And þañ þe quene said vn-tiff hym: 'Alexander,' quop scho, 'wher-fore ert þou ferde, & why chaungeþ þou chere. Thou þat hase destroyed̄ all þe werlde; conquerour of Perse, of Inde, of Mede, and many oþer 28 rewmes & landez, Now arte þou witowtten̄ scheddynḡe of blode fallen̄ in þe dawngere & in þe handez of quene Candace vnausyli. And þare-by may þou wele knawe þat a manes hert sulde on na wyse be enhanced̄ in pride. For if all it bee þat ofte tymmes 32 grete prosperitee fall̄ to mañ, Sodaynly falleþ aduersitee tiff hym wheñ he leste wenes.' Wheñ Alexander herde þis he bigañ to grayste wit þe teethe and to torne his hede hedir & thedir, And quene Candace saide vn-tiff hym̄: 'Whare to 36 angers þou þe,' quop scho, '& trubleþ thi selfe? What may now thi grete Imperiañ glory, thi witt & thi mighte serue

¹ Four lines with red-capital A.

the offe?' Alexander ansuerde & said: 'Forsothe', *quop* Alexander, 'resonably I am angry at my selfe bi-cause I hafe na swerde here.' *Quop* þe quene: 'I suppose þou hadd a
 4 swerde, nowe, what walde do *pare-wit*? 'Sothely,' *quop* he, 'bi-cause I hafe wilfully betrayed my-selfe vn-to þe. First I solde sla þe and það, I dowte it noȝt, I sulde be slayne for þe.' 'Now for sothe,' *quop* scho, 'þis was wisely & manfully sayde.
 8 Neuer-þe-less be nathynge heuy. For as þou delyuerde my soñ wyfe Candeolus oute of þe daungere of þe kyng of Bebrikes Swaa sañ I delyuer the oute of þe daungere of thyñ enemys þat þou hase here. For I say þe in certayne, and it ware
 12 knaweñ þat þou ware here vn-to my menȝe, onauē þay walde slaa þe by-cause þou slewe Porus þe kyng of Inde. For my soñ wyfe Carator was his doughter.' And whenð scho had said þis, Scho tuk Alexander bi þe hande & ledd hym forthe
 16 in-till hir forchambire and said vntill hir sones: 'My dere sonnes,' *quop* scho, 'I pray ȝow late vs make þis knyghte of Alexander gude chere, and schew hyñ añ þe humanitye þat we cañ. For Alexander has schewed vs grete frendchipe
 20 and grete gudnesse.' And það hir ȝongeste ansuerde & said: 'Moder,' * *quop* he, 'sothe it es þat he es a messangere of Alexanders, & a knyghte of his, and þat he delyuerde my proper wyfe of þe hande; of þe kyng of þe Bebrikes and broghte hym
 24 & hir hame vn-till vs bathe safe & sownde. Neuer-þe-lesse my wyfe constreynȝ me for to do Antyochus to dede bi-cause of þe dede of hir Fadir Porus, whilke Alexander slewe, So þat Alexander may hafe sorow for his knyghte. *Quop* quene
 28 Candace það: 'Lefe soñ, what wirchip may we get *pare-offe* if we slaa this knyghte þus traytourusly.' And það Candeolus sayde wit a grete Ære, 'Þis knyghte,' *quop* he, 'saued me & my wyfe & broghte vs hedir safe & sonde; And als sañ I hafe
 32 hym, agayne till his lorde, or I sañ be dede *parefore*.' And Carator ansuerde & saide: 'Proper,' *quop* he, 'what says þou? will þou þat aythere of vs here slaa *ofer*?' 'In gud faythe proper,' *quop* he, 'it es noȝte my will, ne my liste. Neuer-
 36 þe-lesse if it be thi liste, I am redy, rather það þis knyghte be dedde.' And whenð þe quene saw þat hir sonnes walde ayther of það slaa *ofer*, scho was wonder sary, and tuk Alexander oñ syde, and saide vn-till hym preualy: 'A. a, kyng Alexander,'

Alexander is angry at himself. Had he but a sword he would slay her and die for it. She commends him, therefore she bids him not fear, for since he helped her son she will deliver him from another son who is Porus' son-in-law. She introduces Alexander as one of his own knights, Antiochus.

* Leaf 43 Her younger son would slay him for his wife's sake, to grieve Alexander.

Candeolus offers to defend Alexander with his own life.

Candace appeals to Alexander to save her sons from

combat by his wit, so that either slay not other. Alexander promises to do so. Alexander offers to betray Alexander to Carator.

quop scho, 'whi wilt þou noȝte schewe thi witt, and helpe thurgh thi wisdom þat my somes slaa noȝt ayther of þaðn oper?' And Alexander answerde and said: 'Late me goo speke wit þam,' quop he. And scho lete hym goo. And 4 he went to þaðn and sayde vn-to Carator: 'For sothe, Carator,' quop he, 'I late þe wite þat if þou slaa me, þou salt wyne bot lyttill wirchipe pareoffe. For I say þe, kyng Alexander hase many worthyer knyghtis wit hym þaðn I aȝ; And þarefore he 8 will hafe littill sorowe for my dede. Trowes þou þat and Alexander hadd lufed me wele þat he walde hafe sent me hyder to be killeð amangeȝ ȝowe. Bot if þou wilt þat I bekeȝ the Alexander þe slaere of þi wyfe fader & bryng hym bi-for the, 12 Swere me þat what so I asche þe, þou salt graunte mee it, And I sure þe bi þe faythe of my body, I salt bryng Alexander in-to þis palace be-fore þe.' And when Carator herde this, he was riȝte glade, and trowed þat that Alexander said. And so ware 16 þe twa breȝer pesede, And highte Alexander þat his askyng sulde be fulfilled als ferforthe als þaire powere reched, if so ware þat he helde couenant. Þaðn quene Candace leedd Alexander on syde & sayð vn-till hym in preuatee: 'Wele ware me,' quop scho, 20 'myghte I ilke day hafe þe present be-fore myȝ eghne as I hafe myȝ awenȝ childere. For thurgh the sulde I ouercome all myȝ Enemys.' And þaðn [scho] gaffe Alexander a coronȝ of golde sett full of precyous dyamandeȝ, and a mantill Imperiaȝ 24 of a clathe of golde * wit sternes wofen þare-ȝ, and sett full of precyouse stanes. And þaðn scho kyssed hym & oper preuee thyngȝ didð till hym, And badde hym goo in hir blyssyng.

Carator assents.

Queen Candace parts from Alexander with many gifts.

* Leaf 43 bk.

Alexander and Candaeolus come to a cave. Alexander, sacrificing, goes in. He sees a great god sitting with eyes like stars. The god greets him.

1 Than kyng Alexander and Candaeolus went furthe all that 28 daye, And come till a grete spelunc, and þare þay herberde þaðn. And Candaeolus saide till Alexander: 'In this spelunc,' quop hee, 'þat you here seeȝ all goddeȝ ere wount for to ete and halde þaire consaȝ.' And þaðn onane Alexander made sacra- 32 fyceȝ till his goddeȝ and enterde in-to þe caue by hym ane. And þare he sawe a myrke clowde, & in þat myrknesse, he sawe as it ware bryghte sternes, and amangeȝ þase sternes he saw a grete godð sitt, And his eghne lyke twa lanternes. And when 36 Alexander saw hyȝ he was so fered þat he was as it hadd bene

¹ Red capital *T* in four lines space and small *t* in margin.

in a transynge. And þaⁿ þe godd^d said vn-to hymⁿ: 'Haile,
Alexander,' quop he. And Alexander ansuerde & said: 'Lorde,'
quop he, 'what art þou?' 'I am,' quop he, 'Sensoⁿchosis
4 þat gouerne^z þe kyngdomⁿ of þe werlde and þat hase made meⁿ
sugettes vn-to the. And þou hase bigged^d þiselfe many ryalle
cite^z. Bot temple walde þou naue make in þe wirehippe of
me.' And Alexander ansuerd^d & said: 'Lorde,' quop he, ' & þou
8 wiff graunt me þat I sall wit prosperitee come in-to Macedoyne
I sall ordeyne the a temple þare sall no^zte be swilke anoþer
in all þe werlde.' And he ansuerd^d agayne & saide: 'For
sothe,' quop hee, 'Macedoyne sall þou neuer see wit thynⁿ
12 eghne. Neuer-þe-lesse walke Innermare & luke what þou see^z.'
Alexander þaⁿ went forthirmare & saw anoþer myrke clowde
and saw a godd^dsitt in a trone lyke a kyngge, and Alexander said
vn-till hym: 'Lorde,' quop he, 'what art þou?' 'I am,' quop he,
16 'þe begynnynge of all godde^z and Serapis es my name. I sawe
the in þe lande of liby & nowe I see þe here.' 'Serapis,'
quop Alexander, 'I beseke þe telle me wha it es þat sall sla
me.' Quod Serapis: 'I talde þe bi-fore, þat and þe cause
20 of a manes dede ware knaweⁿ vn-till hym, he solde dy for
sorowe. Þou hase bygged a gloricus citee agaynes þe whilke
many emperours sall fighte. Þare-in sall thi graue be made
and þare-in sall þou be beried.' And þaⁿ Alexander come oute
24 of þe caue, and tuke his leue at Candeolus and went till his Oste.

¹ One þe morne he remowed^d his Oste And come till a valay
þat was full of grete ²serpentes þe whilk hade in þaire heuedis
Grete smaragde^z. Thir serpente^z *lyffede all wit gyngere and
28 pepir þat growede in þe valaye. And ilke a zere þay feghte to-
gedir and many of þaⁿ slae^z oþer. Off þe forsaid Smaragdes
tuk Alexander sunⁿ wit hym of þe gretteste þat he couthe
gett.

32 ³Fra þeine þay remowed^d & come in-till a place in þe whilke
þare ware beste^z þat hade one ilke a fote twa clees as swyne
hase, and þase clees ware throe fote brade wit þe whilke þay
smate Alexander knyghtes. Þay had also heuedes lyke swyne
36 & tayles lyke lyouns. Þare ware also amange^z þaⁿ grypes þe

Sensocho-
sis reproves
Alex-
ander's
neglect
of him.
Alexander
swears to
build him
a temple in
Macedonia.
The god
tells him he
shall never
see it again.

Alexander
goes fur-
ther into
the cave
and sees a
god en-
throned in
the dark,
Serapis,
who fore-
tells him
where
he shall
be buried.

On the
morrow he
removes

* Leaf 44.
his army
and comes
to a valley
of strange
serpents.
They see
other
strange
beasts and
griffons
who attack
Alex-
ander's
knights.
They could

¹ Three lines with red capital *O* and small *o* in the margin.

² MS. 'serpe' crossed out and 'serpentes'

written.

³ Three lines with red capital *F* and small *f* in the margin beside.

carry off a knight and his horse.

Alexander's knights fight manfully against them.

They come to a great river and make boats to cross over. The people of the country send Alexander gifts.

They find women in that river who slay men.

Two of them they capture.

They come to Gog and * Leaf 44 bk.

Magog, who are the ten tribes of Israel led out of their own land by a Persian king. They ask Alexander leave to come forth.

whilke smate knyghtes in þe vesageȝ rechte felly. Þay ware so strange þat ane of þaṁ wolde bere away an armed knyghte & his horse also. Þaṁ kynge *Alexander* rade hedir & þedir amangeȝ his meṁ and comforthed þaṁ and badd þaṁ fehte 4 manly agaynes þaṁ wit speres and wit arowes. And so þay did. Bot *pare* was slayne of *Alexander* knyghtes ccviii.

¹ And fra þeine þay remowed and come till a grete ryuer þe whilke was twenty furlange on brede fra þe ta banke to 8 þe toper. And on þase bankes *pare* growed redis wonder grete and hye. Of þase redes garte *Alexander* mak bates & anynte þaṁ wit terre & talgḡ of bestez, And badd his knyghtis row ouer þe water in þase bates. And þay did soo. And when þe 12 [pople]² of þe cuntree herde tell of þe commynge of *Alexander* & his Oste, þay sent hym gyftes of swylyk thynges als was in paire cuntree, þat es at say Grete spoungeȝ bathe white & purple & schelles of þe see so grete þat an of þaṁ walde 16 halde twa pekkes or three. Þay sent hym also wormes þat þay drew owte of þat ryuer grettere þaṁ a manes thee, and þay ware swetter of taste þaṁ any fysche. Þay gaffe hym Cukstoles all rede þat ware of a wonderfull gretnesse. In þat ryuer ware 20 womans þat ware wonder faire & þay hade oṁ þaṁ mekiḡ here þat rechedd dound to thaire fete. Þir women, when þay saw any straunge meṁ swymme in þat riuer, owþer þay drowned þaṁ in þe water, or elis þay walde lede þaṁ to þe redeȝ þat 24 growed oṁ þe water bankes and garre þaṁ lye by þaṁ ay till any lyfe was in þaṁ. Þe Macedoynes persued þaṁ & tuke twa of þaṁ and broghte þaṁ till *Alexander*,* and þay ware als white as any snawe, and þay ware ten fote lange and paire 28 teethe ware lyke dogge teethe.

³ Efter this *Alexander* went and closed in a maner of folkes þat are called Gog & Magog, with-in þe hilleȝ of Caspy. Þis folkeȝ were of þe ten kyndeȝ of *Israel*, and þay ware leedd owte 32 of paire awend land bi a kyng of *Perse* be-cause of paire synnez and halden in thralledom. And þay asched *Alexander* leue for to wende furth of þat cuntree. And *Alexander* gert spirre þe cause of paire thraldom, and he was encensed þat be-cause þay 36

¹ Three lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in margin beside.

² *M.S.* reads, *And when þe of þe cuntree*

(? þe[i] of, &c.).

³ Three lines with red capital *E* and small *e* in the margin beside.

hadd' forsaken' þaire goddez lawe, þat es at say, godd' of Isrl̄, and wirchiped' Calues & oper Mawmettes, þare-fore þay ware ledd' oute of þaire awennd lande & haldeid in thralldom̄, and þat
 4 prophetes had prophiced' be-fore þat þay sulde neuer come oute of thraldom̄ bi-fore agayne þe day of dome. And þaīd Alexander ausuerde & said þat he sulde sperre þaīd Iīd mare seurely. And þaīd he garte close all þe entreez wit stane & lyme & sand; Bot
 8 all þat he garte make on þe day was fordone oīd þe nyghte. And whēd Alexander saw þat mannes laboure myghte nozte staude in stede, he bi-soghte godd' of Isrl̄ þat if it ware his liste þat þay habade þare, þat he walde close þaīd in. And þe nexte nyghte
 12 aftir ilk a cragge felle tīf' oper, and so þare may nathynge passe in nor owte. And þare-by it semez þat it es nozte goddez will þat þay come oute. Neuer-þe-lesse abowte þe Ende of þe werlde þay saīd breke oute and do mekīf' schathe & slaa many
 16 meīd.

¹ Fra þeine þay remowed' & come to þe grete See Occane. In þat See þay sawe ane Ile a littīf' fra þe lande. And in þat Ile þay herde meīd speke grewe. And þaīd Alexander commanded'
 20 þat suīd of his knyghts sulde do off þaire clathes and swyme ouer to þe ile. And þay did' soo. And als sone als þay come in þe See þare come gret crabbes vp oute of þe water & pullede þaīd downne to þe grounde & drowned' þaīd.
 24 ²Thanne remowed' þay fra thethyīd and went ay endlande þe See syde to-warde þe solstice of wynter trauellande xī days; and at þe laste þay come to a reede See, and þare þay lugede þaīd. Þare was faste by a Mountayne wonder hye, One
 28 þe whilke Alexander went vp. And whēd he was abowīd oīd þe heghte þare-offe, hym thoghte þat he was nerre þe Firmament þan þe erthe; þaīd he ymaged' in his hert swilk a gynīd how he myghte make * gripes bere hym vp in-to þe ayere. And
 32 onane he come doune of þe Mountayne and garte come bi-fore hyīd his Maistre wrightes and eomandīd' þaīd þat þay sulde make hym a chayer and trelesse it wit barre; of Ireīd one ilk a syde so þat he myzte saucly sitt þare-in. And þaīd he gart
 36 brynge foure gripes and tye þaīd faste wit Ireīd cheynes vn-to þe chayere, and in þe ouermare party of þe chayere he gart putt

¹ Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* in the margin beside.

² Three lines with red capital *T* and small capital *T* in margin.

But he learns that they had forsaken the True God for idols, and therefore they are banished and imprisoned till Doomsday. Alexander says he shall bar them in more surely. God answers his prayers, and rocks fall down and shut them in until Doomsday, when they shall come forth to do great harm. They come to the sea and an isle near the shore. They hear men speak Greek there. Alexander's messengers to the isle are killed by crabs. They travel along the * Leaf 45. seashore to the Red Sea. Alexander goes up a mountain. His master workers make him

a chair
whereby
he is borne
by griffons
up into the
air.

He comes
down about
ten days'
march
from his
army.
Then he
lusteth to
know the
depths of
the sea.
The master
glaziers
make him
a glazen
cage with
iron bars
and it is
lowered
down
into the
sea, and
there he
beholds
many won-
ders and
strange
beasts until
he is drawn
up again
by his
knights.

They
march on
and have
to fight
* Leaf 45
bk.
strange
horned
beasts.
They come
to the wil-
derness of

mete for þe grippes. And það he wente and sett hym in þe chayere. And onane þe grippes bare hym vp in þe ayer so hye þat Alexander thoghte all þe erthe na mare það a flure þare meñ thresscheȝ corne, and þe See lyke a dragon abowte 4 þe erthe. Það sodaynly a speeyall vertu of godd vmbilapped þe grippes þat gart það discende doune to þe erthe in a felde : ten .x. day iournee fra þe Oste, and he hadd na hurt ne na schathe in þe chayere. Bot wit grete disesse at þe laste he 8 come till his Oste.

¹ After þis Alexander ymageden in his hert þat he walde know þe preuates þat are in þe see. And onane he gart come bifore hym all þe Maister glasyers þat ware in þe Oste, And comandede 12 það to make hym a grete tounne of passandy clere glasse þat he myghte thurgh it clerely see all maner of thyng þat ware wit-owtten it. And when it was made he gart tresse it al abowte witowtten wit barres of yreñ and feste þare-to lang cheynes of 16 yreñ, and gart a certane of þe strangeste & maste tristy knyghtes þat langed vn-till hym halde þir cheynes. And það he went in-to þe tounne & gart pykke wele þe entree whare he went in, and það late it douñ into þe See. And þare he sawe dyuerse 20 schappes of fisches of dyuerse colours; and sunñ he sawe hafe þe schappe of dyuerse besteȝ here one þe lande, gangande on fete as besteȝ dose here & etande fruyte of treesse þat groweȝ on þe See grunde. Þir besteȝ come till hym. Bot onane as þay 24 saw hym thorow þe glasse þay fledde fra hym. He sawe þare also many oper meruaylous thynges. þe whilke he walde tell na mañ bi-cause meñ walde noghte hafe trowed það if he had talde það, and at a certayne houre þase þat he hadd assyngned 28 be-fore, his knyghtes drewe hym vp oute of þe See.

² Fra þeine þay Remowed Folowande þe bankes of þe Rede See, and lused það in a place, whare þare ware wylde Besteȝ that hade cñ þaire heuedis hornes lyke vn-to * sawes, and þay 32 ware als scharpe als swerdeȝ. And with thire hornes þay slewe & hurte many knyghtis of Alexanders & cloue þaire cheldes in sonder. Neuer-þe-lesse Alexander knyghtis slew of það ccecli.

³ And fra þeine þay removed and come in-till wilderness 36

¹ Four lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the margin beside.

² Three lines with red capital *F* and

small *f* in margin besides.

³ Three lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the margin beside.

bitwex þe recel See and Araby, whare grete multitude of Pepir
growed; And þare ware many grete nedders wit hornnes on
þaire hedes lyke tuppe hornes, wit þe whilke þay smate Alex-
4 ander knyghtis riȝt felly. Off þase nedderes slew þe Macedoynes
a grete party.

¹ Þeine þay removed and lugeð in a place whare many
Rynosephales ware, þe whilke hade henedes & manes lyke
8 horseȝ. And þay hade grete bodys, and wonder grete teethe
and lange, and oute of þaire mouthes þay schotte flawmeȝ
of fyre. And when þay saw þe Oste luge þare þay come
& assaylled þam. And Alexander rañ hyder and thedir
12 amangeȝ þe oste and comforthed his knyghtes and bad þam
feghte manly wit þase monstres. And so þay didð. Neuer-pe-
lesse þare ware a grete multitude of his knyghtis slayne of þase
bestes. Bot of þe Rynocéphales þare was slayne an hugge
16 multitude.

² Þam þay removed fra þeine and come in-till a champayne
cuntree and lugeð þam þare, And lay þare a certane days,
Bi-cause of his horse Buktyphalas þat felt seke þare; of þe
20 whilke sekenesse he dyed. And when Alexander saw hym dedð
he made grete dole for hym and weped for hym riȝt sare. For
he hadð borne hym in many a Batelle, and broghte [hym] oute of
many perefis. And þare-fore when he was dede Alexander
24 gart doo aboute hym grete exequyes and gart make hym a full
riche toubme & a hye and didð hym þare-in and made a grete
citee þare, þe whilke in mynde of his horse he gart call Bukty-
phalas.

28 ³ Fra þeine þay removed and come till a ryuere ⁴ þat was called
Cytan or Deciracy whare meñ of þe cuntree broghte hym
v̄ Olyphantes and v̄ cartes of werre. And fra þeine þay
removed & come till kynges ȝerses palace. And in þat Palace
32 þay fande beddeȝ of clene golde many a thowsande. Þare ware
also grete fewles white als doufes, þe whilke had knawying
be-fore of a seke mañ wheder he schulde lyffe or dye. For
if þay by-helde þe seke mañ in þe vesage, he schulde mende &
36 fare wele. And if þay turned þam awaywarde witowtten

pepper
trees and
horned
adders.

They meet
and have
to fight
Rhinoeri
that spit
forth fire.

They fight
them
fiercely.

Alex-
ander's
steed Buce-
phalus dies.
He makes
a rich tomb
and builds
a city
round him.

They come
to the
palace of
Xerxes.

The birds
that fore-
tell the life
or death of
a man.

¹ Three lines.

² Three lines.

³ MS. has a small *f* written in margin,
but no space for the large capital to be put.

⁴ The scribe first wrote *verre*, then
altered it to *ryvere*, then scratched it all out
and wrote *rycere* after it.

* Leaf 46. doute he schulde dye,* and if þay tourned hym þe bakke wit owtteñ dowte he sulde dye.

They come to Babylon and capture it.

Thence Alexander writes to his mother and to Aristotle.

¹ FRA þeine þay remowed and come to þe grete Citee of Babiloyne and wanne it oo werre and slew þe kyng þare-offe 4 & þe Captayne also. And þare he duelled vn-till his lyffes end; and þat was Bot vij seuē Monethes. In þat mene tyme Alexander sent a lettre till Olympias his Moder and till his Mayster Arestotle, latand þam witte of þe Batells and þe dyssese 8 þat þay suffred bathe wynters and Somers in Inde and oper cuntrees, and also of þe Batells þat þay hadd' wit dyuerse Monstres. And þam Arestotle wrate anoper lettre till Alexander agayne þe whilke was of this tenour :

Aristotle writes to Alexander again praising him greatly for his victories.

² ' Un-till Alexandere þe grete kyng of kynge; Arestotle sende; ioy and seruyce. When I hade redde your wyrchipfull lettres I was gretly astonayd. For whilke cause I desyre with all myñ hert for to fynde lonyng þat I myghte zelde vn-to þe. 16 I take witnessse at oure godde; þat for þe passaunde hardenesse of þi hert & þe grete aentours þat þou hase put þe in, þou erte wele worthy for to be loued & praysede. For þou hase sene & assayed thynge; þat neuer mañ or þis durste assaye. Whare-for 20 thankynge & lonyng I zelde to þe makere of all þis wyde werlde þat swylke victoryes hase grantede vn-to þe. For þou hase ouercommēd all & nane hase ouercomeñ þe. Full blyssede are all thy prynce; þat hase bene obeyande vnto þe, and helped' þe 24 in all thi disesse;.'

Alexander has a wondrous throne made.

The throne of Alexander with its images, its ruby, and its inscriptions.

³ Afftir þis Alexander gart make in Babyloyne a wonder curious trone ⁴ of golde, þare was nozte swilke anoper in þe werlde. For þe greke; broghte so mekiñ golde oute of perse & 28 oute of Inde, þat it ware wonder for to telle. Þis ilke toure was twlue cubyte; hye and by twelue grece; ⁵ meñ ascended þare-too, and pase grece; ware all of golde. Þis trone was wonderfully wroghte and sett apouñ twelue ymage; of golde, þe 32 whilke trone þe forsaid' ymage; helde vp wit þaire hende. And on þase twelue ymage; ware wretyñ þe names of þe twelue prynce; of Macedoyne. Þe seet of þe trone was of a Smaragde,

¹ Three lines with big capital *F* followed by small capital.

² Four lines with red capital *U* and small *u* in the margin.

³ Four lines with red capital *A* and

small *a* in the margin beside.

⁴ *ture* scratched out and *trone* written in.

⁵ The first part of this word reads *gr + blot + ce;*

& þe sydeþ *pare* off ware of Topazes & in ilkañd of þe greeþ ware sett dyuerse maneres of precyouse stanes. In þe summyt of þis trone *pare* was sett a ruby þat schane on þe nyghte as it hade
4 bene þe Mone. In þis trone also was *pare* sett oñ ilko a syde dyuerse ymageþ on þe whilke ware wretyñd bathe in latyne & in grew* verseþ þat contened^r all þe nammes of þe rewmes & cuntreeþ þat Alexandere had conquered^r and ware sugetes vn-till hym.

* Leaf 46 bk.

8 ¹ After þis ⁴ Alexander gert make a corodñ of golde sett full of all maner of precyouse stanes, and gert wryte apoñ it a tytle in grew & in latyñd: 'Ortus & occasus, Aquilo michi seruit & Auster.' Þat es at saye: 'Est & weste, Northe & southe dose

The crown of Alexander and the inscriptions thereon.

12 seruyce vn-to me.' In the mene tyme whils Alexander was in babyloyn, a womañ was delyner of a knaue childe þe whilke fra þe heuede to þe nauyñ had^r schappe of mañ, & was borne dedd. And fra þe nauyñ downwardes it had lyknesse of dyuerse

The strange child born in Babylon half alive and half dead, half man and half animal, and the meaning it has. The death of Alexander and the coming of his successor. In what they shall not be like him.

16 besteþ and was qwykke. Þis Monstre was takeñ & broghte till Alexander; and als soñ als he saw it he meruaylled^r gretly *pare*-off, and gart come bi-fore hymñ a philosopher þat couthe of wiche-crafte, & aschede hym what it sygnifyed. And when þe

20 philosopher saw it, he syghede, & saye wepand^r sayde vn-to hym: 'Sothely wirchipfull emperour,' quop he, 'þe tyme commez nere that þou sall passe oute of this werlde.' 'Telle me,' quop Alexander, 'whareby þou knawes þat.' And þe philosophre

24 ansuerde & sayde: 'My lorde,' quop he, 'þe halfe of þis Monstre þat hase þe schappe of mañ & es dedd, betakens þat þou sall passe out of þis werlde in haste. And þe toper party þat hase þe lyknes of dyuerse besteþ & es on lyfe, betakyngeþ þe kynges

28 þat sall come after þe. Bot *pare* sall nane of þañd be lyke vn-to þe, na mare þañd a beste es lyke vn-till a mañ.' When Alexander herde þis he was wonder heuy, and sare wepand^r he sayde on þis wyse: 'O Allmyghty Iubiter,' quop he, 'what

The sorrow of Alexander.

32 menez it þat my dayes sall be so schortte? Me thynke þat it had bene semely þat I had leffed^r langere for till haf endid thynges þat are in my thoghte. Bot for als mekill als it es nozte plesande vn-to þe, I beseke the þat þou resayffe me when

36 I sall passe hethelid als thyñ aweñ seruante.'

Antipator wishes for

² In this mene tyme *pare* was in Macedoyne a lorde þat highte

¹ Three lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the margin beside.

² Four lines with red capital *I* and small *i* in margin beside.

the death
of Alex-
ander, who
is warned
of him by
Olympias.

Antipater, þe whilke of langetyme be-fore hadd casten for þe dedde of *Alexander*; And wit many oper þat he hadd confedred vn-till hym he conspyred for to brynge it tyll ende, bot he myghte neuer come aboute þer-with. For Olympias, *Alex- 4*
ander moder, wrate vn-till hym ofte-sythes and warned hym þat he scholde be warre wit Antipater & his childre, and here-fore was Antypater wonder sary. So apouñ a tyme he vmbly-thoghte hym þat he myghte neuer come aboute wit his purpose 8
for to slaa *Alexander*, bot if it ware thurgh enpuysonynge. *And so apouñ a daye he went till a Soteñ leche, and boghte of hym a maner of drynke made of puysoñ that was so feste & so ranke þat þare myghte no vesselie halde it Bot a vessel made of Ireñ; 12
and þare-in he putt it. And það he gaffe it his soñ Cassandre, and bad hym bere it till his broþer Iobas and byd hym, quop he, gyffe it to kyng *Alexander* in his drynke, whēd he seez his tyme. This ilk Iobas was a faire zong mañ & was duellyng with 16
Alexander, and gretly by-luffede & cheriste of hym. Bot so it be-felle apouñ a tyme þat *Alexander* smate Iobas on þe heued wit a warderere for na trespasse. Where-fore Iobas was gretly angred and grieved at *Alexander* and consented till his dede, and 20
take þe puysoñ of his broþer þat was ordeyñed for *Alexander* dede þat luffed hym so mekiff.

* Leaf 47.

He buys
poison and
gives it to
his son to
have it
given to
Alexander
by a pro-
tégé whom
he has
struck.

¹ And apouñ a daye *Alexander* gart ordeyne a grete reuetie in Babyloyne and called þare too all his pryñce; oñ ilke a syde. 24
And as he satt at þe mete Imanage his pryñce; he was wonder mery & gladde & iocund; and reheted his lordez & prayed það þat þay schulde be mery. Það Iobas þat serued þe kyng of his coupe tuke of þe puysoñ a porcyoñ, and putt it vnder þe nayle 28
of his thowme, and broghte þe coppe to þe kyng full of wyne. And as he gaffe it to þe kyng, he lete þe puysoñ falle in þe wyne priually. And als sone als þe kyng hadd dronkeñ þe puysoñ, Sudaynly he gaffe a grete scryke, and lened hym down 32
toward þe rihte syde. For hym thoghte reghte als a mañ hadd smyted hym in-to þe lyuere wit a suerde. Neuer-þe-lesse he feyñed & forbare a while & suffred a grete penance, and whēd he myzte na langere habyde, he rase vp fra þe burde and 36
saide till his lordez & his knyghtes: 'Lordyngis,' quop he,

His protégé
gives
the king
a drop of
poison in
his cup
from his
thumb.
Alexander
cries
out with
pain, but
forbears
awhile
to leave
the feast.

¹ Three lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the margin beside.

‘I pray 3ow sitt 3e stiff & etez & drynkez & bee3 mery.’ Bot þay ware gretly troubledd and rase vp fra þe burdez and stode witowtted for to see þe ende. And Alexander went in-till
 4 his chambir gretly tourmentid, and soghte a fethir for to putt in his throtte for to garre hym hafe a vomet of þe puysoñ þat he hadd resayffed. And Iobas, þat was cheffe of all this hye tresoñ, gatt a fethir & enoynt it wit þe same puysoñ
 8 & broghte it till Alexander; and he tuk it & putt it in his throtte, and belyfe * þe puysoñ vexed hym ay mare & mare. And það Alexander bade ane gauge & open þe palace gates þat ware on Eufrates banke. And alle þat nyzte he woke
 12 in grete paynez & tourment. And aboute mydnyzthte he rase oute of þe bedde þat he lay in and putt oute þe lyghte þat brynt by-fore hym, and for he myghte noghte ga vprightez, he creped one hende & one fete doune to-warde Eufratez for till hafe
 16 drowned hym selfe, þat þe strenth of þe water myzth hafe borne hym away whare neuer mañ solde hafe fuñd hym.

And Rosañ his wyfe folowed as faste as scho myghte. And wheñ scho come to hym scho felle vpon hym & embraced hym
 20 in hir armes & said vn-till hym: ‘Allas, my lorde Alexander,’ quop scho, ‘wilt þou now lene me & gaa slaa thi-selfe.’ And scho wepe þat it was dole to see; and Alexander ansuerde & sayde: ‘I beseke þe Rosañ,’ quop he, ‘þat ert so dere to me
 24 & so swete, late nane wit of myñd Endynge, if all it be þat we may na langare hafe ioy togedir.’ And það Rosañ ledd Alexander agayne to his bedd, and layde her armes aboute his nekke and kyssede hym many a tyme, and sare wepand said
 28 vn-till hym: ‘A, A, my swete lorde,’ quop scho, ‘if þine ende be nowe commed, ordayne firste for vs or 3e passe hepine.’ And onane he callede vn-till hym Iobas & bade hym feche vn-till hym Semyoñ his notary. And wheñ he was comed he garte
 32 bere hym dowñ in-to þe haulle, and he garte come by-fore hym all his pryncez & bade his notary wryte his testament bi-fore það all oñ þis wyse.

¹ ‘ARestotle oure dere Maister, we comande the & prayse the,
 36 þat of oure awen tresour þou sende to þe prestez of Egipt þat ministrez in þe temple, where-in oure body sall be beryed

¹ Three lines with red capital A, and small a in the margin beside, small capital R following.

He uses a feather to spew it forth, but again the feather is poisoned.

* Leaf 47 bk. In his agony he goes to the Euphrates to drown himself.

But his wife Roxana follows and prevents him and tries to console him.

She asks him first to provide for her.

He calls his notary.

He commands Aristotle to give to

the Egyptian priest of his mausoleum. Ptolemy is the governor. If Roxana bear a man child he shall be Emperor ; * Leaf 48. if a girl they shall choose their own. He appor-tions his domains.

The earth-quake.

The Macedonians come armed and demand to see their Emperor.

He prays his knights bear him before them.

He praises them. They speak with him and pray

& entered, ȝ besandez of golde. Also I wilf that Tholomeus pat es kepare of oure body be *your* Gouvernour, And forgetis noghte my laste wilf, Bot lateȝ my testament be alway bi-fore *your* eghne so pat it be fulfilled & noghte forgetyū. My wilf es also pat if Rosaū my wyfe be delyuer of a knafe childe pat he be *your* Emperour and gyffeȝ hym what name so ȝow liste, and if scho be delyuer of a mayden childe, paū es it my wilf pat the Macedoynes chese paū a kyng, and pat my wyfe be lady of * all my mobles. Also I wilf pat Tholomeus be kyng of Egipt, and pat he tak tilf his wyfe Cleopatra, pat my Fader wedded sum-tyme here bi-fore, and pat he be lorde & prynce ouer all þe lordez of þe Este eueū vn-to Bactriaū. Also I wilf pat my broþer Arrideus be kyng of þe Pelopones, also pat Cleopater be kyng of Perse, Mellagere kyng of Ethopy, And Anthiochus be kyng vn-to þe landez of Gog & magoge, Aresteȝ kyng of Inde, Lissymacus lorde of Seleuce, Lythamoū kyng of hungary, Caulus kyng of Ermony, Illicus kyng of Dalmace. Symeōū my Notary, wilf I, be Kyng of Capadoce & Pamphily, Cassander & Iobas be lordez vn-to þe Ryuer pat es called Sofl, Antipater þaire Fader be kyng of Cicile. When this testament was in wrytynge bi-fore Alexander Sodeynly þare come a thonncere & a leuennyng & ane erthedouū rizte a hedous, so pat all babyloyne qwoke þare-wit. And than thorowte all Babyloyne þe noyse rase pat Alexander was dede. And paū all þe Macedoynes rasse hallely and come armed to þe Palace, and cryed on þe prynceȝ & said vn-to paū : ‘Sothely,’ quop þay, ‘but if ȝe onane schewe vs oure Emperour we saff slaa ȝow ilk ane.’ And when kyng Alexander herde swilke noyse he askede whate it ment, and þe prynceȝ ansuerde & sayde : ‘Þe Macedoynes,’ quop þay, ‘are comēd armede hedir before þe ȝates, & says sekerly bot if þay see ȝow þay saff slaa vs alle are þay passe heþine.’ And when Alexander herde þis, he badd his knyghtis pat þay scholde take hym vp, and bere hym in-to þe consistorye. And þay did soo. And paū he garte open þe Palace ȝates pat þe Macedoynes myȝte come by-fore hym. And paū kyng Alexander be-gaū to comend paū of þaire strenth & þaire grete doghtynes, and charged paū pat þay scholde be in pesse & reste ilkane wit oper. Paū þe Macedoynes, sare wepande, sayde vn-tilf Alexander : ‘A, A, wirchipfull,’ quop þay, ‘ordayne & telle vs are ȝe passe

heyne whaū 3e wiff þat be oure emperour efter 3ow.' And Alexander ansuerd & sayde, 'A, A, my dere knyghtis,' quop he, 'wheū I am dede whayū so 3e wiff chese, be 3our emperour 4 efter mee.' And þay ansuerde, 'Lord,' quop þay, 'we beseke 3owe þat 3e wiff graunt vs Perdic to be oure Emperour.' 'I vouche wele saffe,' quop Alexander, 'þat Perdic be 3our Emperour. Gers hym come be-fore mee.' 'And wheū he was 8 comēd by-fore hym he gaffe hym þe kyngdome* of Macedoyne wif þe Emperourchipe. And he gaffe hym also Rosaū for to be his wyffe, and prayed hym þat he walde be gude & gentill till hir. And þan he kyssede all þe lordez & þe knyghtis of 12 Macedoyne ilkane after oþer, and sighed and weped wonder sare. Þare was þaū so grete dole & wepyng, þat it was lyke a thonere. For meū Supposeþ þat nozte allanly meū made Sorow for þe dede of so worthy ane Emperour, Bot also þe soū 16 and all þe oþer planetis and elementes ware troubled.

² A prynce of Macedoyne stode nere Alexander bedd þat lighte Seleucus, & wif grete dole & wepyng he sayd: 'A, A, þou wirchipfull emperour,' quop he, 'what saff we do wheū þou 20 ert dede. Philippe þi fader gouerned vs wele & alle oure rewme, Bot þe gentilnes & þe largesse of the na tunge may tell.' And þaū Alexander sett hym vp in his bedd and gaffe hym selfe a grete flappe on þe cheke and by-gaū for to wepe rizte 24 bitterly, and in þe langage of Macedoyne, he sayde on þis wyse :

'Full waa es me vnhappy wreche,' quop he, 'þat euer I was borne to maū. For now Alexander dyes and Macedoyne saff waxe ay lesse & lesse and emenische day bi day.' Thaū all þe Macedoynes wif an hye voyce and bitter wepyng sayd vn-till hym: 'Better it ware till vs,' quop þay, 'for to dy wif þe þaū for to se þe dy in oure presence. For wele we wate þat, efter þe dede of the, þe kyngdom of Macedoyne es vndone for euere. 32 Allas oure wirchipfull Alexander, why leses þou vs here and wendeþ away be thyū ane, withowted thi Macedoynes ?' Thaū kyng Alexander alway sighand & wepand said vn-to þam: 'A, A, my dere Macedoynes,' quop he, 'fra this tyū forwarde 36 saff neuer 3our name hafe lordchipe ouer þe Barbarenes.' And þaū þe Macedoynes cryed and sayde: 'O wirchipfull lorde,' quop

him for Perdicas for their king.

He gives

* Leaf 48 bk.

Perdicas Macedonia and the Emperourship, and also Roxana as wife.

He kisses all the Macedonian Lords.

Seleucus grieues by Alexander's bedside that they shall have no good leader.

Alexander bewails his fate that Macedonia shall dwindle with his death. All the Macedonians say it were better to die with him.

The griet of the Macedonians.

¹ Three lines with red capital A, and smaller a in the margin beside.

² Four lines with red capital A, and small a in the margin beside.

þay, 'þou ledd¹ vs in-to Perse, Arraby, and Inde, and vn-to the werldeꝝ ende, and in-to what cuntree þat þe liste wende; why, lorde, fleez þou now fra vs? Lede vs wit the whedir so þou gase.'

Alexander sends rich gifts to the Temple of Apollo in Athens and makes order for the embalming of his body.

> Leaf 49.
His death.

The funeral of Alexander.

His burial and wonderful tomb.

The description of Alexander.

The years of his life and his warlike deeds.

Það kyng Alexander sent to þe templee of Appollo in⁴ Athenes many riche iowels, and on þe same wyse till all oper temples. And það he commanded þat when he ware dede, þay schulde enoynte his body and embawme it wit riche oynementes, þe whilke kepis menes bodys in graues wit-owtten corrupcioun.⁸ Það he hadde Tholomeus þat he scholde [take] a c̄ besantes of golde, & þare-off gere make hym a tombe in Alexander. And onane * as he had commanded hym þus, one-seeand það afl, he swelt. And það his pryneeꝝ lifte vp his body, and did apoð his¹² clethyng of astate and putt a riche corou on his heued, and sett hym in þe emperours chayer, þe whilke twelue pryneeꝝ drewe wit þaire bresteꝝ fra Babiloyne till Alexander. Tholomeus went alway bi-fore þe chayere wepande & sayande one þis¹⁶ wyse: 'Full waa es me, My lord Alexander, waa es me. For in all thi lyfe slew þou neuer so many meñ as þou dose nowe after þi dede.' All Alexanders knyghtis also weped & made grete dole & sayde on þis wyse: 'Waa es vs wrechis! whatt schaff wee²⁰ now do after þe dede of oure lorde Alexander? Whedir schaff we now gaa or whate partye may we now chese? Whare schaff we now get any helpe till oure lyfelade?' One þis wyse þay went wepand after Alexander, till þay come till þe citee of²⁴ Alexander. And þare þay beryed hym in a toumbe þat was riȝte hye and wonder curyouslye wroghte. Þis tombe was afl of fyne golde sett full of precyous stanes, and on þat toumbe þer was sett xxx ymages of golde wonder craftily made.²⁸

¹ Alexander was a mañ bot of a comouñ stature, wit a lunge nekke, Faire eghne & glad, his chekes ruddy, and all þe remenant of his lymmes ware faire & semely & lyke vn-till a lorde. He ouercome all meñ & neuer was ouerccmeñ. The lenthe³² of his lyffe was xxxij ȝere, twa & thritty ȝere & seuē monethes. Fra þe twentyd ȝere of his birthe he gaffe hym to werre, and in twelue ȝere he conquered all þe werlde, and made subiect un-till hym alkyñ nacyouns. Seueñ monethes he ristede hym. He was³⁶ borne on þe vij kl of January, and dyed on þe vij kl of August.

¹ Large red capital A.

He byggit̄ also in his lyfe xij grete citeez þat liden-to-wardes bene enhabyt, and þis are þaire names. Firſte *Alexander* þat es called yprysilicas, þe secunð *Alexander* es called *Bepyporam*,
 4 þe thrid̄ *Alexander* es callede *Sithia*, þe ferthe *Alexander* es called *Bicontristi*, þe fifte *Alexander* es called *Þerauctoñ*, þe sext *Alexander* es called *Buctiphaloñ*, þe seuent es called vnder þe ryuer of Tygre, þe aghtend̄ *New Babiloyne*, þe nyend̄ *Aptreadañ*,
 8 þe tend̄ *Messageges*, þe elleuend̄ *Ypsyacoñ*, þe twelfed̄ es called *Egipt*.

The twelve
great cities
that he
built.

Explicit vita Alexandry magni conquestoris.

Here endeþ þe lyf of gret *Alexander conquerour* of all þe
 12 worlde.

Early English Text Society.

LONDON :

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY.

BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.

BROADWAY HOUSE, LUDGATE HILL, E.C.

AND BY HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS.

AMEN CORNER, E.C., AND IN NEW YORK.

Early English Text Society.

Committee of Management:

Director: PROF. I. GOLLANCZ, LITT.D.; KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON, W.C.

Assistant Director: JOHN MUNRO, Esq.

Treasurer: HENRY B. WHEATLEY, Esq.

Hon. Sec.: W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67, VICTORIA ROAD, FINSBURY PARK, N.

Hon. Secs. for America: { North & East: Prof. G. L. KITTREDGE, Harvard Coll., Cambr., Mass.
South & West: Prof. J. W. BRIGHT, Johns Hopkins Univ., Baltimore.

HENRY BRADLEY, M.A., PH.D.

PROF. NAPIER, PH.D.

REV. DR. ANDREW CLARK, M.A.

ALFRED W. POLLARD, M.A.

PROF. W. P. KER, LL.D.

PROF. J. SCHICK, PH.D.

SIR SIDNEY L. LEE, LITT.D.

ROBERT STEELE, Esq.

HENRY LITTLEHALES, Esq.

SIR GEORGE F. WARNER.

SIR J. A. H. MURRAY, LITT.D.

DR. W. ALDIS WRIGHT.

(With power to add Workers to their number.)

Bankers:

THE UNION OF LONDON AND SMITHS BANK, 2, PRINCES STREET, E.C.

THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY was started by the late DR. FURNIVALL in 1864 for the purpose of bringing the mass of Old English Literature within the reach of the ordinary student, and of wiping away the reproach under which England had long rested, of having felt little interest in the monuments of her early language and life.

On the starting of the Society, so many Texts of importance were at once taken in hand by its Editors, that it became necessary in 1867 to open, besides the *Original Series* with which the Society began, an *Extra Series* which should be mainly devoted to fresh editions of all that is most valuable in printed MSS. and Caxton's and other black-letter books, though first editions of MSS. will not be excluded when the convenience of issuing them demands their inclusion in the Extra Series.

During the forty-eight years of the Society's existence, it has produced, with whatever shortcomings, and at a cost of over £30,000, an amount of good solid work for which all students of our Language, and some of our Literature, must be grateful, and which has rendered possible the beginnings (at least) of proper Histories and Dictionaries of that Language and Literature, and has illustrated the thoughts, the life, the manners and customs of our forefathers and foremothers.

But the Society's experience has shown the very small number of those inheritors of the speech of Cynewulf, Chaucer, and Shakspeare, who care two guineas a year for the records of that speech. 'Let the dead past bury its dead' is still the cry of Great Britain and her Colonies, and of America, in the matter of language. The Society has never had money enough to produce the Texts that could easily have been got ready for it; and many Editors are now anxious to send to press the work they have prepared. The necessity has therefore arisen for trying to increase the number of the Society's members, and to induce its well-wishers to help it by gifts of money, either in one sum or by instalments. The Committee trust that every Member will bring before his or her friends and acquaintances the Society's claims for liberal support. Until all Early English MSS. are printed, no proper History of our Language or Social Life is possible.

The Subscription to the Society, which constitutes membership, is £1 1s. a year for the ORIGINAL SERIES, and £1 1s. for the EXTRA SERIES, due in advance on the 1st of JANUARY, and should be paid by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money-Order, cross 'Union of London and Smiths Bank,' to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N. Members who want their Texts posted to them must add to their prepaid Subscriptions 1s. for the Original Series, and 1s. for the Extra Series, yearly. The Society's Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the Lists; but Members can get back-Texts at one-third less than the List-prices by sending the cash for them in advance to the Hon. Secretary.

☞ The Society intends to complete, as soon as its funds will allow, the Reprints of its out-of-print Texts of the year 1866, and also of nos. 20, 26, and 33. Dr. Otto Glanving has undertaken *Seinte Marherete*; and *Hali Meidenhul* is in type. As the cost of these Reprints, if they were not needed, would have been devoted to fresh Texts, the Reprints will be sent to all Members in lieu of such Texts. Though called 'Reprints,' these books are new editions, generally with valuable additions, a fact not noticed by a few careless receivers of them, who have complained that they already had the volumes.

A gratifying gift is to be made to the Society. The American owner of the unique MS. of the Works of John Metham—whose Romance of Amoryus and Cleopas was sketched by Dr. Furnivall in his new edition of *Political, Religious and Love Poems*, No. 15 in the Society's Original Series—has promised to give the Society an edition of his MS. prepared by Dr. Hardin Craig of Princeton, and it will be issued next year as No. 132 of the Original Series. The giver hopes that his example may be followed by other folk, as the support hitherto given to the Society is so far below that which it deserves.

The Original Series Texts for 1910 were No. 139, *John Arderne's Treatises on Fistula in Ano*, &c., edited by D'Arcy Power, M.D., englished about 1425 from the Latin of about 1380 A.D.; No. 140, *Cappuze's Lives of St. Augustine and St. Gilbert of Sempringham*, A.D. 1451, edited by John Munro.

The Original Series Texts for 1911 were, No. 141, *Earth upon Earth*, all the known texts, edited by Miss Hilda Murray, M.A.; No. 142, *The English Register of Godstow Nunnery*, Part III, containing Forewords, Grammar Notes and Indexes, edited by Dr. Andrew Clark; and No. 143, *The Wars of Alexander*, edited from the Thornton MS. by J. S. Westlake, M.A. (still at press).

The Original Series Texts for 1912 were, No. 144, *The English Register of Osceay Abbey, by Oxford*, Part II, containing Forewords, Grammar, Notes and Indexes, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark, and No. 145, *The Northern Passion*, Part I, containing the four parallel texts of the poem, with variants from other manuscripts, edited by Miss Frances A. Foster.

Mr. John Munro has at press a revised and enlarged edition of Original Series, No. 26, the shorter pieces from the Thornton Manuscript, originally edited by the Rev. G. G. Perry, and this will be sent out to all subscribers to the Original Series for 1913. A revised edition of Dr. MacCracken's *Minor Poems of Lydgate*, Part I, will be issued to subscribers of 1910.

The Texts for future years will be chosen from Part III of *The Brut*; Part III of the *Alphabet of Tales*, edited by Mrs. M. M. Banks; Part II of Mr. A. O. Belfour's *Twelfth Century Homilies*; and Part IV of Miss Dormer Harris's *Coventry Lost Book*. Later Texts will be Part III of Robert of Brunne's *Handlyng Synne*, with a Glossary of Wm. of Waddington's French words in his *Manuel des Pechiez*, and comments on them, by Mr. Dickson Brown; Part II of the *Exeter Book*—Anglo-Saxon Poems from the unique MS. in Exeter Cathedral—re-edited by Professor Gollancz; Part II of Prof. Dr. Holtjausen's *Vices and Virtues*; Part II of *Jacob's Well*, edited by Dr. Brandeis; the Alliterative *Siege of Jerusalem*, edited by the late Prof. Dr. E. Kolbing and Prof. Dr. Kaluza; an Introduction and Glossary to the *Minor Poems of the Vernon MS.* by H. Hartley, M.A.; Alain Chartier's *Quadrilogue*, edited from the unique MS. Univ. Coll. Oxford No. 85, by Prof. J. W. H. Atkins; and the *Early Verse and Prose* in the Harleian MS. 2253, re-edited by Miss Hilda Murray. Canon Wordsworth of Marlborough having given the Society a copy of the *Leofric Canonical Rule*, Latin and Anglo-Saxon, Parker MS. 191, C. C. Cambridge, Prof. Napier will edit it, with a fragment of the englished *Capitula* of Bp. Theodulf: it is now at press.

The Extra Series Texts for 1910 were No. CVI, *Lydgate's Troy Book*, Part III, containing Books IV and V, completing the text, edited by Hy. Bergen, Ph.D.; and No. CVII, *Lydgate's Minor Poems*, Part I, *Religious Poems*, with the Lydgate Canon, edited by H. N. MacCracken, Ph.D.

The Extra Series Texts for 1911 were, No. CVIII, *Lydgate's Siege of Thebes*, Part I, the text, edited from the MSS. by Dr. A. Erdmann; and No. CIX, *Partonope*, Part I, edited from its 3 MSS. by Dr. A. T. Böldtker.

The Extra Series Texts for 1912 were, No. CX, *Caedon's Mirror of the World*, edited with reproductions of all the woodcuts, by Dr. O. H. Prior, M.A., and No. CXI, *Caedon's History of Jason*, Part I, the text, edited by Mr. John Munro (both at press).

Future Extra Series Texts will be Lydgate's *Minor Poems*, Part II, *Secular Poems*, ed. by Dr. H. N. MacCracken; *Lydgate's Troy Book*, Part IV, edited by Dr. Hy. Bergen; *De Medicina*, re-edited by Prof. DeCourt; *Loechir's Romance of Merlin*, re-edited by Prof. E. A. Koek, Part II; Miss Eleanor Plummer's re-edition of *Sir Goethe and Sir Percyalle*; Miss K. B. Lockock's re-edition of Hylton's *Ladder of Perfection*; Miss Warren's two-text

elition of *The Dance of Death* from the Ellesmere and other MS.; *The Owl and Nightingale*, two parallel Texts, edited by Mr. G. F. H. Sykes; Dr. Erbe's re-edition of *Mirk's Festial*, Part II; Dr. M. Konrath's re-edition of *William of Shoreham's Poems*, Part II; Professor Gollancz's re-edition of two Alliterative Poems, *Winner and Waster*, &c.; about 1360; Dr. Norman Moore's re-edition of *The Book of the Foundation of St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London*, from the unique MS. about 1425, which gives an account of the Founder, Rahere, and the miraculous cures wrought at the Hospital; *The Craft of Nombryng*, with other of the earliest enlight Treatises on Arithmetic, edited by R. Steele, B.A.; and the Second Part of the prose Romance of *Melusine*—Introduction, with ten facsimiles of the best woodblocks of the old foreign black-letter editions, Glossary, &c., by A. K. Donald, B.A.

Later Texts for the Extra Series will include *The Three Kings' Sons*, Part II, the Introduction, &c., by Prof. Dr. Leon Kellner; Part II of *The Chester Plays*, re-edited from the MSS., with a full collation of the formerly missing Devonshire MS., by Mr. G. England and Dr. Matthews; Prof. Jespersen's editions of John Hart's *Orthographie* (MS. 1551 A.D.; black-letter 1569), and *Method to teach Reading, 1570*; Deguilleville's *Pilgrimage of the Soule*, in English prose, edited by Mr. Hans Koestner. (For the three prose versions of *The Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*—two English, one French—an Editor is wanted.) Members are asked to realise the fact that the Society has now 50 years' work on its Lists,—at its present rate of production,—and that there is from 100 to 200 more years' work to come after that. The year 2000 will not see finished all the Texts that the Society ought to print. The need of more Members and money is pressing. Offers of help from willing Editors have continually to be declined because the Society has no funds to print their Texts.

Before his death in 1895, Mr. G. N. Currie was preparing an edition of the 15th and 16th century Prose Versions of Guillaume de Deguilleville's *Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*, with the French prose version by Jean Gallopes, from Lord Aldenham's MS., he having generously promised to pay the extra cost of printing the French text, and engraving one or two of the illuminations in his MS. But Mr. Currie, when on his deathbed, charged a friend to burn all his MSS. which lay in a corner of his room, and unluckily all the E. E. T. S.'s copies of the Deguilleville prose versions were with them, and were burnt with them, so that the Society will be put to the cost of fresh copies.

Guillaume de Deguilleville, monk of the Cistercian abbey of Chaalis, in the diocese of Senlis, wrote his first verse *Pèlerinage de l'Homme* in 1330-1 when he was 36.¹ Twenty-five (or six) years after, in 1355, he revised his poem, and issued a second version of it,² a revision of which was printed ab. 1500. Of the prose representative of the first version, 1330-1, a prose Englishing, about 1430 A.D., was edited by Mr. Aldis Wright for the Roxburghe Club in 1869, from MS. Ff. 5. 30 in the Cambridge University Library. Other copies of this prose English are in the Hunterian Museum, Glasgow, Q. 2. 25; Sion College, London; and the Laud Collection in the Bodleian, no. 740.³ A copy in the Northern dialect is MS. G. 21, in St. John's Coll., Cambridge, and this is the MS. which will be edited for the E. E. Text Society. The Laud MS. 740 was somewhat condensed and modernised, in the 17th century, into MS. Ff. 6. 30, in the Cambridge University Library;⁴ "The Pilgrime or the Pilgrimage of Man in this World," copied by Will. Baspoole, whose copy "was verbatim written by Walter Parker, 1645, and from thence transcribed by G. G. 1649; and from thence by W. A. 1655." This last copy may have been read by, or its story reported to, Bunyan, and may have been the groundwork of his *Pilgrim's Progress*. It will be edited for the E. E. T. Soc., its text running under the earlier English, as in Mr. Herrtage's edition of the *Gesta Romanorum* for the Society. In February 1464,⁵ Jean Gallopes—a clerk of Angers, afterwards chaplain to John, Duke of Bedford, Regent of France—turned Deguilleville's first verse *Pèlerinage* into a prose *Pèlerinage de la vie humaine*.⁶ By the kindness of Lord Aldenham, as above mentioned, Gallopes's French text will be printed opposite the early prose northern Englishing in the Society's edition.

The Second Version of Deguilleville's *Pèlerinage de l'Homme*, A.D. 1355 or -6, was enlight in verse by Lydgate in 1426, and, thanks to the diligence of the old Elizabethan tailor and manuscript-lover, John Stowe, a complete text of Lydgate's poem has been edited for the Society by Dr. Furnivall. The British Museum French MSS. (Harleian 4399,⁷ and Additional 22,937⁸ and 25,594⁹) are all of the First Version.

¹ He was born about 1295. See Abbé GOUJET'S *Bibliothèque française*, Vol. IX, p. 73-4.—P. M. The Roxburghe Club printed the 1st version in 1893.

² The Roxburghe Club's copy of this 2nd version was lent to Mr. Currie, and unluckily burnt too with his other MSS.

³ These 3 MSS. have not yet been collated, but are believed to be all of the same version.

⁴ Another MS. is in the Pepys Library. ⁵ According to Lord Aldenham's MS.

⁶ These were printed in France, late in the 15th or early in the 16th century.

⁷ 15th cent., containing only the *Vie humaine*.

⁸ 15th cent., containing all the 3 Pilgrimages, the 3rd being Jesus Christ's.

⁹ 14th cent., containing the *Vie humaine* and the 2nd Pilgrimage, *de l'Âme*: both incomplete.

Besides his first *Pelgrinaige de l'homme* in its two versions, Deguilleville wrote a second, "de l'ame separee du corps," and a third, "de nostre seigneur Iesus." Of the second, a prose Englishing of 1413, *The Pilgrimage of the Soule* (with poems, by Hoccleve, already printed for the Society with that author's *Repayment of Princes*), exists in the Egerton MS. 615,¹ at Hatfield, Cambridge (Univ. Kk. 1. 7, and Caius), Oxford (Univ. Coll. and Corpus), and in Caxton's edition of 1483. This version has 'some-what of addicions' as Caxton says, and some shortenings too, as the maker of both, the first translator, tells us in the MSS. Caxton leaves out the earlier englisher's interesting Epilogue in the Egerton MS. This prose englishing of the *Soule* has been copied and will be edited for the Society by Mr. Hans Koestner. Of the *Pilgrimage of Jesus*, no englishing is known.

Members are reminded that *fresh Subscribers are always wanted*, and that the Committee can at any time, on short notice, send to press an additional Thousand Pounds' worth of work.

The Subscribers to the Original Series must be prepared for the issue of the whole of the Early English *Lives of Saints*, sooner or later. The Standard Collection of Saints' Lives in the Corpus and Ashmole MSS., the Harleian MS. 2277, &c. will repeat the Laud set, our No. 87, with additions, and in right order. (The foundation MS. (Laud 108) had to be printed first, to prevent quite unwieldy collations.) The Supplementary Lives from the Vernon and other MSS. will form one or two separate volumes.

Besides the Saints' Lives, Trevisa's englishing of *Bartholomæus de Proprietatibus Rerum*, the mediæval Cyclopædia of Science, &c., will be the Society's next big undertaking. Prof. Napier of Oxford, wishing to have the whole of our MS. Anglo-Saxon in type, and accessible to students, will edit for the Society all the unprinted and other Anglo-Saxon Homilies which are not included in Thorpe's edition of Ælfric's prose,² Dr. Morris's of the Blickling Homilies, and Prof. Skeat's of Ælfric's Metrical Homilies. The late Prof. Kolbing left complete his text, for the Society, of the *Ancora Rivale*, from the best MS., with collations of the other four, and this will be edited for the Society by Dr. Thümmler. Mr. Harvey means to prepare an edition of the three MSS. of the *Earliest English Metrical Psalter*, one of which was edited by the late Mr. Stevenson for the Society.

Members of the Society will learn with pleasure that its example has been followed, not only by the Old French Text Society, which has done such admirable work under its founders Profs. Paul Meyer and Gaston Paris, but also by the Early Russian Text Society, which was set on foot in 1877, and has since issued many excellent editions of old MS. Chronicles, &c.

Members will also note with pleasure the annexation of large tracts of our Early English territory by the important German contingent, the late Professors Zupitza and Kölling, the living Hausknecht, Eienkel, Haenisch, Kaluza, Ilupe, Adam, Holthausen, Schick, Herzfeld, Brandeis, Sieper, Konrath, Wülfing, &c. Scandinavia has also sent us Prof. Erdmann and Dr. E. A. Kock : Holland, Prof. H. Logeman, who is now working in Belgium ; France, Prof. Paul Meyer—with Gaston Paris as adviser (alas, now dead);—Italy, Prof. Lattanzi ; Austria, Dr. von Fleischhacker ; while America is represented by the late Prof. Child, by Dr. Mary Noyes Colvin, Miss Rickert, Profs. Mead, McKnight, Triggs, Hulme, Bryce, Craig, Drs. Bergen, MacCracken, &c. The sympathy, the ready help, which the Society's work has cald forth from the Continent and the United States, have been among the pleasantest experiences of the Society's life, a real aid and cheer amid all troubles and discouragements. All our Members are grateful for it, and recognise that the bond their work has woven between them and the lovers of language and antiquity across the seas is one of the most welcome results of the Society's efforts.

ORIGINAL SERIES. (One guinea each year.)

1. Early English Alliterative Poems, ab. 1360 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.	16s.	1864
2. Arthur, ab. 1440, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A.	4s.	"
3. Lauder on the Dewtie of Kyngis, &c., 1556, ed. F. Hall, D.C.L.	4s.	"
4. Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, ab. 1360, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.	10s.	"
5. Hume's Orthographie and Congruite of the Britan Tongue, ab. 1617, ed. H. B. Wheatley.	4s.	1865
6. Lancelot of the Laik, ab. 1500, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.	8s.	"
7. Genesis & Exodus, ab. 1250, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.	8s.	"
8. Morte Arthure, ab. 1440, ed. E. Brock.	7s.	"
9. Thynne on Speght's ed. of Chaucer, A.D. 1599, ed. Dr. G. Kingsley and Dr. F. J. Furnivall.	10s.	"
10. Merlin, ab. 1440, Part I., ed. H. B. Wheatley.	2s. 6d.	"
11. Lyndesay's Monarche, &c., 1552, Part I., ed. J. Small, M.A.	3s.	"

¹ Ab. 1430, 106 leaves (leaf 1 of text wanting), with illuminations of nice little devils—red, green, tawny, &c.—and damned souls, fires, angels, &c.

² Of these, Mr. Harsley is preparing a new edition, with collations of all the MSS. Many copies of Thorpe's book, not issued by the Ælfric Society, are still in stock.

Of the Verelli Homilies, the Society has bought the copy made by Prof. G. Lattanzi.

12. Wright's Chaste Wife, ab. 1462, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A.	1s.	1865
13. Sainte Marherete, 1200-1330, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne: re-edited by Dr. Otto Glanving. [Out of print.		1866
14. Kyng Horn, Floris and Blancheffour, &c., ed. Rev. J. R. Lumby, D.D., re-ed. Dr. G. H. McKnight.	5s.	"
15. Political, Religious, and Love Poems, ed. F. J. Furnivall.	7s. 6d.	"
16. The Book of Quinte Essence, ab. 1460-70, ed. F. J. Furnivall.	1s.	"
17. Parallel Extracts from 45 MSS. of Piers the Plowman, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.	1s.	"
18. Hali Meidenhad, ab. 1200, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne, re-edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall.	[At Press.	"
19. Lyndesay's Monarchie, &c., Part II., ed. J. Small, M.A.	3s. 6d.	"
20. Richard Rolle de Hampole, English Prose Treatises of, ed. Rev. G. G. Perry.	1s. [At Press.	"
21. Merlin, Part II., ed. H. B. Wheatley.	4s.	"
22. Partenay or Lusignen, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.	6s.	"
23. Dan Michel's Ayenbite of Inwyt, 1340, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.	10s. 6d.	"
24. Hymns to the Virgin and Christ; the Parliament of Devils, &c., ab. 1430, ed. F. J. Furnivall.	3s.	1867
25. The Stacions of Rome, the Pilgrims' Sea-voyage, with Cleme Maydenhod, ed. F. J. Furnivall.	1s.	"
26. Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse, from R. Thornton's MS., ed. Rev. G. G. Perry.	2s. [At Press.	"
27. Levins's Manipulus Vocabulorum, a ryming Dictionary, 1570, ed. H. B. Wheatley.	12s.	"
28. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, 1362 A.D.; Text A, Part I., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.	6s.	"
29. Old English Homilies (ab. 1220-30 A.D.). Series I, Part I. Edited by Rev. Dr. R. Morris.	7s.	"
30. Pierce the Ploughmans Crede, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.	2s.	"
31. Myre's Duties of a Parish Priest, in Verse, ab. 1420 A.D., ed. E. Peacock.	4s.	1868
32. Early English Meals and Manners: the Boke of Nourture of John Russell, the Bokes of Keruyng, Curtasye, and Demeanor, the Babees Book, Urbanitatis, &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall.	12s.	"
33. The Knight de la Tour Landry, ab. 1440 A.D. A Book for Daughters, ed. T. Wright, M.A. [Reprinting.		"
34. Old English Homilies (before 1300 A.D.). Series I, Part II., ed. R. Morris, LL.D.	8s.	"
35. Lyndesay's Works, Part III.: The Historie and Testament of Squyer Meldrun, ed. F. Hall.	2s.	"
36. Merlin, Part III. Ed. H. B. Wheatley. On Arthurian Localities, by J. S. Stuart Glennie.	12s.	1869
37. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part IV., Ane Satyre of the Three Estaitis. Ed. F. Hall, D.C.L.	4s.	"
38. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, Part II. Text B. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.	10s. 6d.	"
39. Alliterative Romance of the Destruction of Troy. Ed. D. Donaldson & G. A. Panton. Pt. I.	10s. 6d.	"
40. English Gilds, their Statutes and Customs, 1389 A.D. Edit. Toulmin Smith and Lucy T. Smith, with an Essay on Gilds and Trades-Unions, by Dr. L. Brentano.	21s.	1870
41. William Lauder's Minor Poems. Ed. F. J. Furnivall.	3s.	"
42. Bernardus De Cura Rei Familiaris, Early Scottish Prophecies, &c. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A.	2s.	"
43. Ratis Raving, and other Moral and Religious Pieces. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A.	3s.	"
44. The Alliterative Romance of Joseph of Arimathe, or The Holy Graill: from the Vernon MS.; with W. de Worle's and Pynson's Lives of Joseph; ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.	5s.	1871
45. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, edited from 2 MSS., with an English translation, by Henry Sweet, Esq., B.A., Balliol College, Oxford. Part I.	10s.	"
46. Legends of the Holy Rood, Symbols of the Passion and Cross Poems, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.	10s.	"
47. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part V., ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray.	3s.	"
48. The Times' Whistle, and other Poems, by R. C. 1616; ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq.	6s.	"
49. An Old English Miscellany, containing a Bestiary, Kentish Sermons, Proverbs of Alfred, and Religious Poems of the 13th cent., ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. R. Morris, LL.D.	10s.	1872
50. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. Part II.	10s.	"
51. The Life of St Juliana, 2 versions, A.D. 1230, with translations; ed. T. O. Cockayne & E. Broock.	2s.	"
52. Palladius on Husbandrie, Englished (ab. 1420 A.D.), ed. Rev. Barton Lodge, M.A. Part I.	10s.	"
53. Old-English Homilies, Series II., and three Hymns to the Virgin and God, 13th-century, with the music to two of them, in old and modern notation; ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D.	8s.	1873
54. The Vision of Piers Plowman, Text C: Richard the Redeles by William, the author of the Vision and The Crowned King; Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.	18s.	"
55. Generydes, a Romance, ab. 1440 A.D., ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part I.	3s.	"
56. The Gest Historiale of the Destruction of Troy, in alliterative verse; ed. by D. Donaldson, Esq., and the late Rev. G. A. Panton. Part II.	10s. 6d.	1874
57. The Early English Version of the "Cursor Mundi": in four Texts, edited by the Rev. R. Morris, M.A., LL.D. Part I, with 2 photolithographic facsimiles.	10s. 6d.	"
58. The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. Part I.	8s.	"
59. The "Cursor Mundi" in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II.	15s.	1875
60. Meditacyuns on the Soper of our Lorde (by Robert of Brunne), edited by J. M. Cowper.	2s. 6d.	"
61. The Romance and Prophecies of Thomas of Erceuldoune, from 5 MSS.; ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray.	10s. 6d.	"
62. The "Cursor Mundi," in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III.	15s.	1876
63. The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II.	7s.	"
64. Francis Thynne's Embleames and Epigrams, A.D. 1600, ed. F. J. Furnivall.	7s.	"
65. Be Domes Dæge Bede's De Die Judicii, &c., ed. J. R. Lumby, B.D.	2s.	"
66. The "Cursor Mundi," in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part IV., with 2 autotypes.	10s.	1877
67. Notes on Piers Plowman, by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. Part I.	21s.	"
68. The "Cursor Mundi," in 4 Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part V.	25s.	1878
69. Adam Davie's 5 Dreams about Edward II., &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A.	5s.	"
70. Generydes, a Romance, ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part II.	4s.	"
71. The Lay Folks Mass-Book, four texts, ed. Rev. Canon Simmons.	25s.	1879

72. Palladius on Husbandrie, english (ab. 1420 A.D.). Part II. Ed. S. J. Heritage, B.A. 15s. 1879
73. The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 10s. 1880
74. English Works of Wyclif, hitherto unprinted, ed. F. D. Matthew, Esq. 20s. "
75. Catholicon Anglicum, an early English Dictionary, from Lord Monson's MS. A.D. 1482, ed. with Introduction & Notes, by S. J. Heritage, B.A.; and with a Preface by H. B. Wheatley. 20s. 1881
76. Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, in MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 10s. "
77. Beowulf, the unique MS. autotyped and transliterated, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D. 25s. 1882
78. The Fifty Earliest English Wills, in the Court of Probate, 1387-1439, ed. by F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 7s. "
79. King Alfred's Orosius, from Lord Tollenache's 9th century MS., Part I, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 13s. 1883
- 79*b*. *Extra Volume*. Facsimile of the Epinal Glossary, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 15s. "
80. The Early-English Life of St. Katherine and its Latin Original, ed. Dr. Eimenkel. 12s. 1884
81. Piers Plowman: Notes, Glossary, &c. Part IV, completing the work, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. 18s. "
82. Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A., LL.D. Part II. 12s. 1885
83. The Oldest English Texts, Charters, &c., ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 20s. "
84. Additional Analogs to 'The Wright's Chaste Wife,' No. 12, by W. A. Clouston. 1s. 1886
85. The Three Kings of Cologne. 2 English Texts, and 1 Latin, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 17s. "
86. Prose Lives of Women Saints, ab. 1610 A.D., ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. C. Horstmann. 12s. "
87. Early English Verse Lives of Saints (earliest version), Laud MS. 108, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s. 1887
88. Hy. Bradshaw's Life of St. Werburge (Pynson, 1521), ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 10s. "
89. Vices and Virtues, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Dr. F. Holtzhausen. Part I. 8s. 1888
90. Anglo-Saxon and Latin Rule of St. Benet, interlinear Glosses, ed. Dr. H. Logemann. 12s. "
91. Two Fifteenth-Century Cookery-Books, ab. 1430-1450, edited by Mr. T. Austin. 10s. "
92. Eadwine's Canterbury Psalter, from the Trin. Camb. MS., ab. 1150 A.D., ed. F. Harsley, B.A. Pt. I. 12s. 1889
93. Defensor's Liber Scintillarum, edited from the MSS. by Ernest Rhodes, B.A. 12s. "
94. Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7, Part III, ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 15s. 1890
95. The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, re-ed. by Dr. Thomas Miller. Part I. § 1. 18s. "
96. The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, re-ed. by Dr. Thomas Miller. Pt. I. § 2. 15s. 1891
97. The Earliest English Prose Psalter, edited from its 2 MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring. Part I. 15s. "
98. Minor Poems of the Vernon MS., Part I, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s. 1892
99. Cursor Mundi. Part VI. Preface, Notes, and Glossary, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. "
100. Capgrave's Life of St. Katharine, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords by Dr. Furnivall. 20s. 1893
101. Cursor Mundi. Part VII. Essay on the MSS., their Dialects, &c., by Dr. H. Huppe. 10s. "
102. Lanfranc's Chirurgie, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhaecker. Part I. 20s. 1894
103. The Legend of the Cross, from a 12th century MS., &c., ed. Prof. A. S. Napier, M.A., Ph.D. 7s. 6d. "
104. The Exeter Book' Anglo-Saxon Poems, re-edited from the unique MS. by I. Gollancz, M.A. Part I. 20s. 1895
105. The Prymer or Lay-Folks' Prayer-Book, Camb. Univ. MS., ab. 1420, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part I. 10s. "
106. R. Misyng's Fire of Love and Mending of Life. Hauppole, 1434, 1435, ed. Rev. R. Harvey, M.A. 15s. 1896
107. The English Conquest of Ireland, A.D. 1166-1185, 2 Texts, 1425, 1440, Pt. I, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 15s. "
108. Child-Marriages and -Divorces, Trothplights, &c. Chester Depositions, 1561-6, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 15s. 1897
109. The Prymer or Lay-Folks' Prayer-Book, ab. 1420, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part II. 10s. "
110. The Old-English Version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, ed. Dr. T. Miller. Part II. § 1. 15s. 1898
111. The Old-English Version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, ed. Dr. T. Miller. Part II. § 2. 15s. "
112. Merlin, Part IV: Outlines of the Legend of Merlin, by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D. 15s. 1899
113. Queen Elizabeth's Englishings of Boethius, Plutarch &c. &c., ed. Miss C. Pemberton. 15s. "
114. Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, Part IV and last, ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 16s. 1900
115. Jacob's Well, edited from the unique Salisbury Cathedral MS. by Dr. A. Brandeis. Part I. 10s. "
116. An Old-English Martyrology, re-edited by Dr. G. Herzfeld. 10s. "
117. Minor Poems of the Vernon MS., edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Part II. 15s. 1901
118. The Lay Folks' Catechism, ed. by Canon Simmons and Rev. H. E. Nolloth, M.A. 5s. "
119. Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne 1303, and its French original, re-ed. by Dr. Furnivall. Pt. I. 10s. "
120. The Rule of St. Benet, in Northern Prose and Verse, & Caxton's Summary, ed. Dr. E. A. Kocks. 15s. 1902
121. The Laud MS. Troy-Book, ed. from the unique Laud MS. 595, by Dr. J. E. Wülfing. Part I. 15s. "
122. The Laud MS. Troy-Book, ed. from the unique Laud MS. 595, by Dr. J. E. Wülfing. Part II. 20s. 1903
123. Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne (1303), and its French original, re-ed. by Dr. Furnivall. Pt. II. 10s. "
124. Twenty-six Political and other Poems from Digby MS. 102 &c., ed. by Dr. J. Kail. Part I. 10s. 1904
125. Medieval Records of a London City Church, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part I. 10s. "
126. An Alphabet of Tales, in Northern English, from the Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks. Part I. 10s. "
127. An Alphabet of Tales, in Northern English, from the Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks. Part II. 10s. 1905
128. Medieval Records of a London City Church, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part II. 10s. "
129. The English Register of Godstow Nunnery, ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Pt. I. 19s. "
130. The English Register of Godstow Nunnery, ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. Dr. A. Clark. Pt. II. 15s. 1906
131. The Brut, or The Chronicle of England, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. F. Brie. Part I. 10s. "
132. John Metham's Works, edited from the unique MS. by Dr. Hardin Craig. [In Press.]
133. The English Register of Osney Abbey, by Oxford, ed. by the Rev. Dr. A. Clark. Part I. 15s. 1907
134. The Coventry Leet Book, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dornier Harris. Part I. 15s. "
135. The Coventry Leet Book, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dornier Harris. Part II. 15s. 1908
- 135*b*. *Extra Issue*. Prof. Marly's Piers Plowman & its Sequence, urging the true God authorship of the P. 10s.
136. The Brut, or The Chronicle of England, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. F. Brie. Part II. 15s. "

137. Twelfth-Century Homilies in MS. Bodley 343, ed. by Prof. A. O. Belfour, M.A. Part I, the Text. 15s. 1909
 138. The Coventry Leet Book, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dormer Harris. Part III. 15s. "
 139. John Arderne's Treatises on Fistula in Ano, &c., ed. by D'Arcy Power, M.D. 15s. 1910
 139 b, c, d, e, *Extra Issue*. The Piers Plowman Controversy: b. Dr. Jusserand's 1st Reply to Prof. Manly; c. Prof. Manly's Answer to Dr. Jusserand; d. Dr. Jusserand's 2nd Reply to Prof. Manly; e. Mr. R. W. Chambers's Article; f. Dr. Henry Bradley's Rejoinder to Mr. R. W. Chambers (issued separately). 10s. "
 140. Capgrave's Lives of St. Augustine and St. Gilbert of Sempringham, A.D. 1451, ed. by J. J. Munro. 10s. "
 141. Earth upon Earth, all the known texts, ed., with an Introduction, by Miss Hilka Murray, M.A. 10s. 1911
 142. The English Register of Godstow Nunnery, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part III. 10s. "
 143. The Wars of Alexander the Great, Thornton MS., ed. J. S. Westlake, M.A. [*At Press.*] 10s. "
 144. The English Register of Cseney Abbey, by Oxford, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part II. 10s. 1912
 145. The Northern Passion, ed. by Miss F. A. Foster. Part I, the four parallel texts. 15s. "
 146. The Coventry Leet Book, ed. Miss M. Dormer Harris. Introduction, Indexes, etc. Part IV. [*At Press.*] 1913
 147. The Northern Passion, ed. Miss F. A. Foster, Introduction, French Text, Variants and Fragments, Glossary. Part II. [*At Press.*] "

EXTRA SERIES. (*One guinea each year.*)

The Publications for 1867-1910 (*one guinea each year*) are:—

- I. Wilham of Palerne; or, William and the Werwolf. Re-edited by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 13s. 1867
 II. Early English Pronunciation with especial Reference to Shakspeare and Chaucer, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part I. 10s. "
 III. Caxton's Book of Curtesye, in Three Versions. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 5s. 1868
 IV. Havelok the Dane. Re-edited by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s. "
 V. Chaucer's Boethius. Edited from the two best MSS. by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 12s. "
 VI. Chevelere Assigne. Re-edited from the unique MS. by Lord Aldenham, M.A. 3s. "
 VII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part II. 10s. 1869
 VIII. Queene Elizabethes Achademy, &c. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. Essays on early Italian and German Books of Courtesy, by W. M. Rossetti and Dr. E. Oswald. 13s. "
 IX. Awdley's Fraternitey of Vacabondes, Harman's Caveat, &c. Ed. E. Viles & F. J. Furnivall. 5s. "
 X. Andrew Boorde's Introduction of Knowledge, 1547, Dyetary of Helth, 1542, Barnes in Defence of the Berde, 1542-3. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 18s. 1870
 XI. Barbour's Bruce, Part I. Ed. from MSS. and editions, by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 12s. "
 XII. England in Henry VIII's Time: a Dialogue between Cardinal Pole & Lupset, by Thom. Starkey, Chaplain to Henry VIII. Ed. J. M. Cowper. Part II. 12s. (Part I. is No. XXXII, 1878, 8s.) 1871
 XIII. A Supplication of the Beggars, by Simon Fish, 1528-9 A.D., ed. F. J. Furnivall; with A Supplication to our Moste Soueraigne Lorde; A Supplication of the Poore Commons; and The Decaye of England by the Great Multitude of Sheep, ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s. "
 XIV. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part III. 10s. "
 XV. Robert Crowley's Thirty-One Epigrams, Voyce of the Last Trumpet, Way to Wealth, &c., A.D. 1550-1, edited by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 12s. 1872
 XVI. Chaucer's Treatise on the Astrolabe. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 6s. "
 XVII. The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D., with 4 Tracts (1542-48), ed. Dr. Murray. Part I. 10s. "
 XVIII. The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D., ed. Dr. Murray. Part II. 8s. 1873
 XIX. Oure Ladyes Myroure, A.D. 1530, ed. Rev. J. H. Blunt, M.A. 24s. "
 XX. Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail (ab. 1450 A.D.), ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part I. 8s. 1874
 XXI. Barbour's Bruce, Part II., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 4s. "
 XXII. Henry Brinklow's Complaynt of Roderick Mors (ab. 1542); and The Lamentacion of a Christian against the Citie of London, made by Roderigo Mors, A.D. 1545. Ed. J. M. Cowper. 9s. "
 XXIII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part IV. 10s. "
 XXIV. Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part II. 10s. 1875
 XXV. Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I. 20s. "
 XXVI. Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part II. 14s. 1876
 XXVII. Bp. Fisher's English Works (died 1535), ed. by Prof. J. E. B. Mayor. Part I, the Text. 16s. "
 XXVIII. Lovelich's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part III. 10s. 1877
 XXIX. Barbour's Bruce. Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 21s. "
 XXX. Lovelich's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part IV. 15s. 1878
 XXXI. The Alliterative Romance of Alexander and Dindimus, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s. "
 XXXII. Starkey's "England in Henry VIII's time." Pt. I. Starkey's Life and Letters, ed. S. J. Herrtage. 8s. "
 XXXIII. Gesta Romanorum (englisht ab. 1440), ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. 15s. 1879
 XXXIV. The Charlemagne Romances:—1. Sir Ferumbas, from Ashm. MS. 33, ed. S. J. Herrtage. 15s. "
 XXXV. Charlemagne Romances:—2. The Sege off Melayne, Sir Otuell, &c., ed. S. J. Herrtage. 12s. 1880
 XXXVI. Charlemagne Romances:—3. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. I., ed. S. J. Herrtage. 16s. "
 XXXVII. Charlemagne Romances:—4. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. II., ed. S. J. Herrtage. 15s. 1881
 XXXVIII. Charlemagne Romances:—5. The Sowdone of Babylone, ed. Dr. Hausknecht. 15s. "
 XXXIX. Charlemagne Romances:—6. Rauf Colyear, Roland, Otuel, &c., ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. 15s. 1882
 XL. Charlemagne Romances:—7. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part I. 15s. "

- XLII. *Charlemagne Romances*:—8. *Huon of Burdeux*, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt. II. 15s. 1887
 XLIII. *Guy of Warwick*: 2 texts (Auchinleck MS. and Caius MS.), ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I. 15s. " "
 XLIII. *Charlemagne Romances*:—9. *Huon of Burdeux*, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt. III. 15s. 1884
 XLIV. *Charlemagne Romances*:—10. *The Four Sons of Aymon*, ed. Miss Octavia Richardson. Pt. I. 15s. " "
 XLV. *Charlemagne Romances*:—11. *The Four Sons of Aymon*, ed. Miss O. Richardson. Pt. II. 20s. 1885
 XLVI. *Sir Bevis of Hamton*, from the Auchinleck and other MSS., ed. Prof. E. Kölbng, Ph.D. Part I. 10s. " "
 XLVII. *The Wars of Alexander*, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 20s. 1886
 XLVIII. *Sir Bevis of Hamton*, ed. Prof. E. Kölbng, Ph.D. Part II. 10s. " "
 XLIX. *Guy of Warwick*, 2 texts (Auchinleck and Caius MSS.), Pt. II., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D. 15s. 1887
 L. *Charlemagne Romances*:—12. *Huon of Burdeux*, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part IV. 5s. " "
 LI. *Torrent of Portyngale*, from the unique MS. in the Chetham Library, ed. E. Adam, Ph.D. 10s. " "
 LII. *Bullein's Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1578* (ed. 1, 1564). Ed. M. & A. H. Bullen. 10s. 1888
 LIII. *Vicary's Anatomie of the Body of Man, 1548*, ed. 1577, ed. F. J. & Percy Furnivall. Part I. 15s. " "
 LIV. *Caxton's Englishing of Alain Chartier's Curial*, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall & Prof. P. Meyer. 5s. " "
 LV. *Barbour's Bruce*, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. Part IV. 5s. 1889
 LVI. *Early English Pronunciation*, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Pt. V., the present English Dialects. 25s. " "
 LVII. *Caxton's Eneydos*, A.D. 1490, coll. with its French, ed. M. T. Culley, M.A. & Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 13s. 1890
 LVIII. *Caxton's Blanchardyn & Eglantine*, c. 1489, extracts from ed. 1595, & French, ed. Dr. L. Kellner. 17s. " "
 LIX. *Guy of Warwick*, 2 texts (Auchinleck and Caius MSS.), Part III., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D. 15s. 1891
 LX. *Lydgate's Temple of Glass*, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. J. Schick. 15s. " "
 LXI. *Hoccleve's Minor Poems*, I., from the Philipps and Durham MSS., ed. F. J. Furnivall, Ph.D. 15s. 1892
 LXII. *The Chester Plays*, re-edited from the MSS. by the late Dr. Hermann Deimling. Part I. 15s. " "
 LXIII. *Thomas a Kempis's De Imitatione Christi*, english at 1440, & 1502, ed. Prof. J. K. Ingram. 15s. 1893
 LXIV. *Caxton's Godfrey of Bolyne, or Last Siege of Jerusalem, 1481*, ed. Dr. Mary N. Colvin. 15s. " "
 LXV. *Sir Bevis of Hamton*, ed. Prof. E. Kölbng, Ph.D. Part III. 15s. 1894
 LXVI. *Lydgate's and Burgh's Secrees of Philosoiffres*, ab. 1445—50, ed. R. Steele, B.A. 15s. " "
 LXVII. *The Three Kings' Sons*, a Romance, ab. 1500, Part I., the Text, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 10s. 1895
 LXVIII. *Melusine*, the prose Romance, ab. 1500, Part I., the Text, ed. A. K. Donald. 20s. " "
 LXIX. *Lydgate's Assembly of the Gods*, ed. Prof. Oscar L. Triggs, M.A., Ph.D. 15s. 1896
 LXX. *The Digby Plays*, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 15s. " "
 LXXI. *The Towneley Plays*, ed. Geo. England and A. W. Pollard, M.A. 15s. 1897
 LXXII. *Hoccleve's Regement of Princes, 1411-12, and 14 Poems*, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 15s. " "
 LXXIII. *Hoccleve's Minor Poems*, II., from the Ashburnham MS., ed. J. Gollancz, M.A. [*At Press*] " "
 LXXIV. *Secreta Secretorum*, 3 prose Englishings, by Jas. Yonge, 1428, ed. R. Steele, B.A. Part I. 20s. 1898
 LXXV. *Speculum Guidonis de Warwyk*, edited by Miss G. L. Morrill, M.A., Ph.D. 10s. " "
 LXXVI. *George Ashby's Poems, &c.*, ed. Miss Mary Bateson. 15s. 1899
 LXXVII. *Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, 1426*, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Part I. 10s. " "
 LXXVIII. *The Life and Death of Mary Magdalene*, by T. Robinson, c. 1620, ed. Dr. H. O. Sommer. 5s. " "
 LXXIX. *Caxton's Dialogues, English and French*, c. 1488, ed. Henry Bradley, M.A. 10s. 1900
 LXXX. *Lydgate's Two Nightingale Poems*, ed. Dr. Otto Glanung. 5s. " "
 LXXXI. *Gower's Confessio Amantis*, edited by G. C. Macaulay, M.A. Vol. I. 15s. " "
 LXXXII. *Gower's Confessio Amantis*, edited by G. C. Macaulay, M.A. Vol. II. 15s. 1901
 LXXXIII. *Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, 1426*, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Pt. II. 10s. " "
 LXXXIV. *Lydgate's Reason and Sensuality*, edited by Dr. E. Sieper. Part I. 5s. " "
 LXXXV. *Alexander Scott's Poems, 1568*, from the unique Edinburgh MS., ed. A. K. Donald, B.A. 10s. 1902
 LXXXVI. *William of Shoreham's Poems*, re-ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. M. Komrath. Part I. 10s. " "
 LXXXVII. *Two Coventry Corpus-Christi Plays*, re-edited by Hardin Craig, M.A. 10s. " "
 LXXXVIII. *Le Morte Arthur*, re-edited from the Harleian MS. 2252 by Prof. Bruce, Ph.D. 15s. 1902
 LXXXIX. *Lydgate's Reason and Sensuality*, edited by Dr. E. Sieper. Part II. 15s. " "
 XC. *English Fragments from Latin Medieval Service-Books*, ed. by Hy. Littlehales. 5s. " "
 XCI. *The Macro Plays*, from Mr. Gurney's unique MS., ed. Dr. Furnivall and A. W. Pollard, M.A. 10s. 1904
 XCII. *Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*, Part III., ed. Miss Loebeck. 10s. " "
 XCIII. *Lovelich's Romance of Merlin*, from the unique MS., ed. Dr. E. A. Kock. Part I. 10s. " "
 XCIV. *Respublica*, a Play on Social England, A.D. 1553, ed. L. A. Magnus, LL.B. 12s. 1905
 XCV. *Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail*, Pt. V.: *The Legend of the Holy Grail*, by Dorothy Kenpe. 6s. " "
 XCVI. *Mirk's Festial*, edited from the MSS. by Dr. Erbe. Part I. 12s. " "
 XCVII. *Lydgate's Troy Book*, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part I, Books I and II. 15s. 1906
 XCVIII. *Skelton's Magnyfyence*, edited by Dr. R. L. Bunsay, with an Introduction. 7s. 6d. " "
 XCIX. *The Romance of Emarré*, re-edited from the MS. by Miss Edith Rickert, Ph.D. 7s. 6d. " "
 C. *The Harrowing of Hell and The Gospel of Nicodemus*, re-ed. by Prof. Hulme, M.A., Ph.D. 15s. 1907
 CI. *Songs, Carols, &c.*, from Richard Hill's Balliol MS., edited by Dr. Roman Dyboski. 15s. " "
 CII. *Promptorium Parvulorum*, the 1st English-Latin Dictionary, ed. Rev. A. L. Mayhew, M.A. 21s. 1908
 CIII. *Lydgate's Troy Book*, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part II, Book III. 10s. " "
 CIV. *The Non-Cycle Mystery Plays*, re-edited by O. Waterhouse, M.A. 15s. 1909
 CV. *The Tale of Beryn, with the Pardoner and Tapster*, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall and W. G. Stone. 15s. " "
 CVI. *Lydgate's Troy Book*, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part III. 15s. 1910
 CVII. *Lydgate's Minor Poems*, edited by Dr. H. N. MacCracken. Part I, Religious Poems. 15s [*At Press*] " "
 CVIII. *Lydgate's Siege of Thebes*, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. Dr. A. Erdmann. Pt. I, The Text. 15s. 1911
 CIX. *Partonope*, re-edited from its 3 MSS. by Dr. A. T. Bodtker. The Texts. 15s. " "
 CX. *Caxton's Mirror of the World*, with all the woodcuts, ed. by O. H. Prior, M.A., Litt.D. 15s. [*At Press*] 1912
 CXI. *Caxton's History of Jason*, the Text, Part I, ed. by John Munro. 15s. " "

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY TEXTS PREPARING.

Besides the Texts named as at press on p. 12 of the Early English Text Society's last Announcements, the following Texts are also slowly preparing for the Society:—

ORIGINAL SERIES.

- The Earliest English Prose Psalter, ed. Dr. K. D. Buelbring. Part II.
 The Earliest English Verse Psalter, 3 texts, ed. Rev. R. Harvey, M.A.
 Anglo-Saxon Poems, from the Vercelli MS., re-edited by Prof. I. Gollancz, M.A.
 Anglo-Saxon Glosses to Latin Prayers and Hymns, edited by Dr. F. Holthausen.
 All the Anglo-Saxon Homilies and Lives of Saints not accessible in English editions, including those of the Vercelli MS. &c., edited by Prof. Napier, M.A., Ph.D.
 The enlight Disciplina Clericalis, Worcester Cathedral MS. 172, ed. Prof. W. H. Hulme, Ph.D.
 The Statutes of Black Roger, Worcester Cathedral MS. 172, ed. Prof. W. H. Hulme, Ph.D.
 The Anglo-Saxon Psalms; all the MSS. in Parallel Texts, ed. Dr. H. Logeman and F. Harsley, B.A.
 Beowulf, a critical Text, &c., edited by a Pupil of the late Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.
 Byrhtferth's Handbooc, ed. by Prof. G. Hempf.
 Early English Confessionals, ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
 The Seven Sages, in the Northern Dialect, from a Cotton MS., edited by Dr. Squires.
 The Master of the Game, a Book of Huntynge for Hen. V. when Prince of Wales, ed. G. A. Beacock, B.A.
 Ailred's Rule of Nuns, &c., edited from the Vernon MS., by the Rev. Canon H. R. Bramley, M.A.
 A Lapidary, from Lord Tollemache's MS., &c., edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
 Early English Deeds and Documents, from unique MSS., ed. Dr. Lorenz Morsbach.
 Gilbert Banastre's Poems, and other Boccaccio englishings, ed. by Prof. Dr. Max Förster.
 Lanfranc's Chirurgie, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker, Part II.
 William of Nassington's Mirror of Life, from Jn. of Waldby, edited by J. A. Herbert, M.A.
 Early Canterbury Wills, edited by William Cowper, B.A., and J. Meadows Cowper.
 Alliterative Prophecies, edited from the MSS. by Prof. Brandl, Ph.D.
 Miscellaneous Alliterative Poems, edited from the MSS. by Dr. L. Morsbach.
 Bird and Beast Poems, a collection from MSS., edited by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 Scire Mori, &c., from the Lichfield MS. 16, ed. Mrs. L. Grindon, LL.A., and Mrs. B. Taylor.
 Nicholas Trivet's French Chronicle, from Sir A. Acland-Hood's unique MS., ed. by F. W. Clarke, M.A.
 Early English Homilies in Harl. 2276, &c., c. 1400, ed. J. Friedländer.
 Extracts from the Registers of Boughton, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.
 The Diary of Prior Moore of Worcester, A.D. 1518-35, from the unique MS., ed. Henry Littlehales, Esq.
 The Pore Caitif, edited from its MSS., by Mr. Peake.
 Trevisa's englishit Vegetius on the Art of War, MS. 30 Magd. Coll. Oxf., ed. L. C. Wharton, M.A.
 Poems attributed to Richard Maydenstone, from MS. Rawl. A 389, edited by Dr. W. Heuser.
 Knighthood and Battle, a verse-Vegetius from a Pembroke Coll. MS., Cambr., ed. Dr. R. Dyboski.
 Othea and Hector, 3 texts—2 from MSS., 1 from Wyer's print, edited by Hy. N. MacCracken, Ph.D.
 Minor Poems of the Vernon MS. Part III. Introduction and Glossary by H. Hartley, M.A.
 Sir David Lyndesay's Works. Part VI. and last. Edited by the Rev. Wm. Bayne, M.A. [At Press.
 Prayers and Devotions, from the unique MS. Cotton Titus C. 19, ed. Hy. Littlehales Esq. [Copied.

EXTRA SERIES.

- Bp. Fisher's English Works, Pt. II., with his Life and Letters, ed. Rev. Ronald Bayne, B.A. [At Press.
 Sir Tristrem, from the unique Auchinleck MS., edited by George F. Black.
 De Guilleville's Pilgrimage of the Sowle, edited by Mr. Hans Koestner.
 Vicary's Anatomie, 1548, from the unique MS. copy by George Jeans, edited by F. J. & Percy Furnivall.
 Vicary's Anatomie, 1548, ed. 1577, edited by F. J. & Percy Furnivall. Part II.
 A Compilacion of Surgerye, from H. de Mandeville and Lanfrank, A.D. 1292, ed. Dr. J. F. Payne.
 William Staunton's St. Patrick's Purgatory, &c., ed. Mr. G. P. Krapp, U.S.A.
 Trevisa's Bartholomæus de Proprietatibus Rerum, re-edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
 Bullein's Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1561, 1573, 1578. Ed. A. H. and M. Bullen. Part II.
 The Romance of Boetus and Sidrac, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 The Romance of Claridus, and Sir Amadas, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 Sir Degrevant, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. Luick.
 Robert of Brunne's Chronicle of England, from the Inner Temple MS., ed. by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph. D.
 Maundeville's Voiage and Travaile, re-edited from the Cotton MS. Titus C. 16, &c. (Editor wanted.)
 Avowynge of Arthur, re-edited from the unique Ireland MS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 Juy of Warwick, Copland's version, edited by a pupil of the late Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.
 Awdelay's Poems, re-edited from the unique MS. Douce 302, by Prof. Dr. E. Wulfing.
 The Wyse Chylde and other early Treatises on Education, Northwich School, Harl. 2099, &c., ed. G. Collar, B.A.
 Caxton's Dictes and Sayengis of Philosophirs, 1477, with Lord Tollemache's MS. version, ed. S. I. Butler, Esq.
 Lydgate's Lyfe of oure Lady, ed. by Prof. Georg Fiedler, Ph.D.
 Lydgate's Life of St. Edmund, edited from the MSS. by Dr. Axel Erdmann.
 Richard Coer de Lion, re-edited from Harl. MS. 4690, by Prof. Haskuecht, Ph.D.
 The Romance of Athelstan, re-edited by a pupil of the late Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D.

EXTRA SERIES (continued).

- The Romance of Sir Degare, re-edited by Dr. Brel.
 The Gospel of Nichodemus, edited by Ernest Riedel.
 Mulcaster's Positions 1581, and *Elementarie* 1582, ed. Dr. Th. Kluehr, Dresden.
 Walton's verse *Boethius de Consolatione*, edited by Dr. H. C. Schummer.
 Sir Landeval and Sir Launfal, edited by Dr. Zimmermann.
 Rolland's Seven Sages, the Scottish version of 1560, edited by George F. Black.
 Burgh's Cato, re-edited from all the MSS. by Prof. Dr. Max Förster.
 Wynkyn de Worde's English and French Phrase-book, etc., edited by Hermann Oelsner, Ph.D.
 Extracts from the Rochester Diocesan Registers, ed. Hy. Littlehales.
 The Coventry Plays, re-edited from the unique MS. by Dr. Matthews.
 Walter Hyton's Ladder of Perfection, re-edited from the MSS. by Miss K. B. Lockock.

Among the MSS. and old books which need copying or re-editing, are :—

ORIGINAL SERIES.

- English Inventories and other MSS. in Canterbury Cathedral (5th Report, Hist. MSS. Com.).
 Maumetrie, from Lord Tollemache's MS.
 The Romance of Troy. Harl. 525, Addit. Br. Mus.
 Biblical MS., Corpus Camb. 434 ab. 1375.
 Hampole's unprinted Works.
pe Clowde of Unknowyng, from Harl. MSS. 2373, 959.
 Bibl. Reg. 17 C 26, &c. Univ. Coll. Oxf. 14.
 A Lanterne of Light, from Harl. MS. 2324
 Soule-hele, from the Vernon MS
 Boethius de Consol.; Pilgrim, 1426, &c. &c.
 Early Treatises on Music: Descant, the Gamme, &c.
 Skelton's englishing of Diodorus Siculus.
 Boethius, in prose, MS. Auct. F. 3. 5, Bodley.
 Penitential Psalms, by Rd. Maydenstoon, Brampton, &c. Rawlinson, A. 389, Douce 232, &c.
 Documents from the early Registers of the Bishops of all Dioceses in Great Britain.
 Ordinances and Documents of the City of Worcester.
 T. Breus's Passion of Christ, 1422. Harl. 2338.
 Jn. Crophill or Crephill's Tracts, Harl. 1735.
 Memoriale Credencium, &c., Harl. 2398.
 Early English Verse Lives of Saints, Standard Collection, from the Harl. MS.
 Early Norwich Wills.
- Book for Recluses, Harl. 2372.
 Lollard Theological Treatises, Harl. 2343, 2380, &c.
 H. Selby's Northern Ethical Tract, Harl. 2388, art. 20.
 Supplementary Early English Lives of Saints.
 Select Prose Treatises from the Vernon MS.
 Lyrical Poems from the Fairfax MS 16, &c.
 Prose Life of St. Andry, A. D. 1595, Corp. Oxf. 129.
 English Miscellanies from MSS., Corp. Oxford.
 Miscellanies from Oxford College MSS.
 Disce Mori, Jesus Coll. Oxf. 39; Bodl. Laud 99.
 Mirror of the blessed liyf of Ihesu Crist. MSS. of Sir Hy. Ingilby, Bart., Lord Aldenham, Univ. Coll. Oxf. 123, &c.
 Poem on Virtues and Vices, &c., Harl. 2269.
 Maundevyle's Legend of Gwydo, Queen's, Oxf. 383.
 Book of Warrants of Edw. VI., &c., New Coll. Oxf. 328.
 Adam Loutfut's Heraldic Tracts, Harl. 6149-50.
 Rules for Gunpowder and Ordnance, Harl. 6355.
 John Watton's enlight Speculum Christiani, Corpus, Oxf. 155, Laud G.12, Thoresby 530, Harl. 2250, art. 20.
 Verse and Prose in Harl. MS. 4012.
 Nicholas of Hereford's English Bible.
 The Prickynge of Love, Harl. 2254, Vernon, &c.
 More Early English Wills from the Probate Registry at Somerset House.

EXTRA SERIES.

- Erle of Tolous Ypotis.
 Sir Eglamour. Alexander.
 Orfeo Digby, 86.
 Dialogues between the Soul and Body
 Barlaam and Josaphat.
 Amis and Amiloun.
 Sir Genarades, from Lord Tollemache's MS.
 The Troy-Book fragments once called Barroun's, in the Camb. Univ. Library and Douce MSS.
 Poems of Charles, Duke of Orleans
 Carols and Songs.
 Songs and Ballads, Ashmole MS. 48.
- Octavian.
 Libeaus Desconus.
 Ywain and Gawain. Sir Isumbras.
 Pilgrimage to Jerusalem, Queen's Coll. Oxf. 357.
 Other Pilgrimages to Jerusalem, Harl. 2332, &c.
 Horæ, Penitential Psalms, &c., Queen's Coll. Oxf. 207.
 St. Brendan's Confession, Queen's Coll. Oxf. 210.
 Scotch Heraldry Tracts, copy of Caxton's Book of Chivalry, &c., Queen's Coll. Oxford 161.
 Stevyn Scrope's Doctryne and Wyse dome of the Auncyent Philosophers, A. D. 1450, Harl. 2266.

The Subscription to the Society, which constitutes membership, is £1 1s. a year for the ORIGINAL SERIES, and £1 1s. for the EXTRA SERIES, due in advance on the 1st of JANUARY, and should be paid by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money-Order, cross 'Union of London and Smiths Bank,' to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N. Members who want their Texts posted to them must add to their prepaid Subscriptions 1s. for the Original Series, and 1s. for the Extra Series, yearly. The Society's Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the Lists; but Members can get back-Texts at one-third less than the List-prices by sending the cash for them in advance to the Hon. Secretary.

Foreign Subscriptions can be paid, and the Society's Texts delivered, through Asher & Co., 17, Behrenstrasse, Berlin.

ORIGINAL SERIES.

The Publications for 1911 (one guinea) were:—

141. **Earth upon Earth**, all the known texts, ed., with an Introduction, by Miss Hilda Murray, M.A. 10s.
 142. **The English Register of Godstow Nunnery**, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part III. 10s.
 143. **The Wars of Alexander the Great**, Thornton MS., ed. J. S. Westlake, M.A. [*At Press.*] 10s.

The Publications for 1912 (one guinea) are:—

144. **The English Register of Osney Abbey, by Oxford**, ed. by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part II. 10s.
 145. **The Northern Passion**, four parallel texts and the French original, edited from the MSS. by Frances A. Foster. The Parallel Texts, Part I. 15s.

The Publications for 1913 (one guinea) are:—

146. **The Coventry Leet-Book**, ed. from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dormer Harris. Introduction, Indexes, &c., Part IV. 10s.
 147. **The Northern Passion**, the French Text, Variants and Fragments, &c., ed. Miss F. A. Foster. Part II. [*At Press.*]
 [Together with an enlarged Reprint of No. 26, originally edited by the Rev. G. G. Perry, **Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse.** (*At Press.*)]

The Publications for 1914 will be chosen from:—

- An Alphabet of Tales, in Northern English, from the Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks. Part III.
 Twenty-six Political and other Poems from Digby MS. 102, &c., edited by Dr. J. Kail. Part II.
The Brut, or **The Chronicles of England**, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. F. Brie. Part III. Notes, &c.
The Laud Troy-Book, edited from the unique MS. Laud 595, by Dr. J. Ernst Wulffing. Part III.
The Old-English Rule of Bp. Chrodegang, and the **Capitula of Bp. Theodulf**, ed. Prof. Napier, Ph.D. [*At Press.*]
Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne (1303), and its French original. Part III.
The Alliterative Siege of Jerusalem, edited by Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D., and Prof. Kaluza, Ph.D. [*At Press.*]
Alain Chartier's Quadrilogue, english, edited from the unique MS. by Prof. J. W. H. Atkins, M.A.
Jacob's Well, edited from the unique Salisbury Cathedral MS. by Dr. A. Brandeis. Part II.
Vices and Virtues, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Prof. Dr. F. Holtjansen, Part II. [*At Press.*]
The Exeter Book (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-ed. from the unique MS., by Prof. Gollancz, Litt. D. Part II. [*At Press.*]
North-English Metrical Homilies, from Ashmole MS. 42 &c., ed. G. H. Gerould, D.Litt.
Vegetius on the Art of War, edited from the MSS. by L. C. Wharton, M.A.
Shirley's Book of Gode Maners, edited from the unique MS. by Hermann Oelsner, Ph.D.
Verse and Prose from the Harl. MS. 2553, re-ed. by Miss Hilda Murray, M.A., of the Royal Holloway College.
A Stanzaic Exposition of the Feasts of the Church and the Life of Christ based on the *Legenda Aurea*, ed. from the MSS., Harl. 3909, Harl. 2250, and Addit. 38066, by Miss F. A. Foster. [*At Press.*]
The Earliest English Apocalypse with a Commentary, edited by Dr. Anna C. Paves.
Dives and Pauper, ed. from the MSS. by Mr. Richardson, M.A.
A Fifteenth-Century Courtesy Book and Two Franciscan Rules, edited by R. W. Chambers, M.A., Litt. D., and W. W. Seton, M.A. [*At Press.*]

EXTRA SERIES.

The Publications for 1911 (one guinea) were:—

- GVIII. **Lydgate's Siege of Thebes**, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. Dr. A. Erdmann. Part I, The Text. 15s.
 CIX. **Partonope**, re-edited from its 3 MSS. by Dr. A. T. Böttcher. The Texts. 15s.

The Publications for 1912 (one guinea) are:—

- GX. **Caxton's Mirror of the World**, with all the Woodcuts, edited by O. H. Prior, M.A. 15s.
 GXI. **Caxton's History of Jason**, edited by John Munro. Part I, the Text. 15s.

The Publications for 1913 (one guinea) are:—

- GXII. **Lovelich's Romance of Merlin**, edited from the unique MS. by Prof. Dr. E. A. Kock. Part II. 15s.
 CXIII. **Poems by Sir John Salusbury, Robert Chester**, and others, from Christ Church MS. 184, ed. by Dr. Carleton Brown. [*At Press.*]

The Publications for 1914 will be chosen from:—

- De Medicina**, a 12th-century Englishing, re-edited by Prof. Joseph Delcourt. [*At Press.*]
Lydgate's Minor Poems, ed. Dr. H. N. MacCracken. Part II, **Secular Poems.** [*At Press.*]
Lydgate's Troy Book, ed. by Dr. H. Bergen. Part IV, Introduction, Notes, &c. [*At Press.*]
Lydgate's Dance of Death, edited from the MSS. by Miss Florence Warren.
Lydgate's Siege of Thebes, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. Dr. A. Erdmann. Part II, Notes, &c.
The Owl and Nightingale, 2 Texts parallel, ed. G. F. H. Sikes, Esq. [*At Press.*]
The Court of Sapience, once thought Lydgate's, edited by Dr. Jaeger.
Mirk's Festial, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Erbe. Part II.
William of Shoreham's Poems, re-edited by Dr. M. Konrath. Part II.
Winner and Waster, &c., two Alliterative Poems, re-edited by Prof. I. Gollancz, Litt. D.
Melusine, the prose Romance, from the unique MS., ab. 1500, ed. A. K. Donald, B.A. Part II. [*At Press.*]
Secreta Secretorum: three prose Englishings, ab. 1440, ed. R. Steele, B.A. Part II. [*At Press.*]
The Craft of Nonbrynge, the earliest English Treatise on Arithmetic, ed. R. Steele, B.A.
The Book of the Foundation of St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London, MS. ab. 1425, ed. Dr. Norman Moore. [*At Press.*]
The Chester Plays, Part II., re-edited by Dr. Matthews. [*At Press.*]
Lichfield Gospels, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall: Introduction by Prof. E. C. K. Gomer. [*Text done.*]
John Hart's Orthographie, from his unique MS. 1551, and his black-letter text, 1569, ed. Prof. Otto Jespersen, Ph.D.
John Hart's Methode to teach Reading, 1570, ed. Prof. Otto Jespersen, Ph.D.
The Three Kings' Sons, Part II, French collation, Introduction, &c., by Dr. L. Kellner.
The Ancren Riwle, edited from its five MSS., by the late Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D., and Dr. Thurneier.
Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail, Part VI.
The Avnturs of Arthur, 2 Texts from the 3 MSS., edited by Wilhelm Wolf.
Caxton's Book of the Order of Chyualry, edited by Miss Alice H. Davies.
Early English Fabliaux, edited by Prof. George H. McKnight, Ph.D.
Ragman Roll, **The Chaunce of the Dyse**, **Ballads, Complaints, and other Pieces**, from MS. Fairfax 16, edited by Prof. Edith Morley.
Piers Plowman, the A Text, re-edited from the MSS. by R. W. Chambers, M.A., Litt. D., and J. H. G. Grafton, M.A. [*At Press.*]
Caxton's Prologues, ed. by Henry Wheatley, Litt. D.

LONDON: KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRUBNER & CO., LTD.,
 BROADWAY HOUSE, LUDGATE HILL, E.C.
 AND HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIV. PRESS, AMEN CORNER, E.C.
 BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 17, BEHRENSTRASSE.

PR Early English Text
1119 Society
A2 [Publications]
no.143 Original series

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

